



TEACH YOURSELF®

beginner's

RUSSIAN

QUESTIONS
PRONOUNS
PREPOSITIONS
NUMBERS
ARTICLES
VERBS AND TENSES
NOUNS
GENDER

grammatical

beginner's

RUSSIAN

grammar

beginner's
RUSSIAN
grammar

Daphne West

TEACH YOURSELF BOOKS

Acknowledgements

The author would like to thank Elena Kelly for her help in the preparation of the manuscript.

For UK orders: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 39 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4TD. Telephone: (44) 01235 400414, Fax: (44) 01235 400454. Lines are open from 9.00–6.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service.
Email address: orders@bookpoint.co.uk

For U.S.A. & Canada orders: please contact NTC/Contemporary Publishing, 4255 West Touhy Avenue, Lincolnwood, Illinois 60646–1975, U.S.A. Telephone: (847) 679 5500, Fax: (847) 679 2494.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning – with more than 30 million copies sold worldwide – the *Teach Yourself* series includes over 200 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, and other leisure activities.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A catalogue entry for this title is available from The British Library.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: On file.

First published in UK 2000 by Hodder Headline Plc, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH.

First published in US 2000 by NTC/Contemporary Publishing, 4255 West Touhy Avenue, Lincolnwood (Chicago), Illinois 60646–1975, U.S.A.

The 'Teach Yourself' name and logo are registered trade marks of Hodder & Stoughton Ltd.

Copyright © 2000 Daphne West

In UK: All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited. Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, 90 Tottenham Court Road, London W1P 9HE.

In US: All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, or otherwise, without prior permission of NTC/Contemporary Publishing Company.

Typeset by Transet Limited, Coventry, England.

Printed in Great Britain for Hodder & Stoughton Educational, a division of Hodder Headline Plc, 338 Euston Road, London NW1 3BH by Cox & Wyman Ltd, Reading, Berkshire.

Impression number	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
Year	2004	2003	2002	2001	2000					

CONTENTS

1 The Cyrillic alphabet	ру́сский алфави́т	2
2 Stress and spelling rules	собáки мólчат	4
THE NOUN		
именительный падéж		
3 Gender of nouns	брát, сестrá, méсто	6
именительный падéж		
4 Nominative singular	студéнт, Ольга, письmó	8
5 Nominative plural	студéнты, актрíсы, пíсьма	10
6 Nominative plural – irregular	городá, друзýя, временá	12
винительный падéж		
7 Accusative singular	я смотрéю телевíзор, я знаю Борýса	14
8 Accusative plural of regular nouns	я читаю журна́лы, он знае́т студéнтов	16
9 Accusative plural of irregular nouns	он купíл сувени́ры, я ужé знаю студéнтов	18
роди́тельный падéж		
10 Genitive singular	пáспорт студéнта	20
11 Genitive plural	грúппа тури́стов	22
12 Genitive plural – irregular	фотографии друзéй	24
дáтельный падéж		
13 Dative singular	Борýс дал Кáте букéт роз	26
14 Dative plural	врач соvéтует спортсмéнам	28
твори́тельный падéж		
15 Instrumental singular	он рабóтает фотóграфом	30
16 Instrumental plural	суп с грибáми	32
предло́жный падéж		
17 Prepositional singular	я рабóтаю в гостинице	34
18 Prepositional plural	они живóут в кварти́рах	36
19 Nouns: Six-case summary	Мария даёт бутылку винá Сергею	38

THE ADJECTIVE**The nominative case**

- 20 The most common kind of adjective: unstressed
 21 Stressed adjectives and soft adjectives
 22 Possessive adjectives
 23 More on possessives – reflexive possessive

имя прилагательное**именительный падеж**

новый, маленький, хороший	40
молодой менеджер, последний	
автобус	42
мой дом в городе	44
он читает свою книгу	46

Other cases

- 24 Accusative singular (animate and inanimate)
 25 Accusative plural (animate and inanimate)
 26 Genitive singular
 27 Genitive plural
 28 Dative singular
 29 Dative plural
 30 Instrumental singular
 31 Instrumental plural
 32 Prepositional singular
 33 Prepositional plural

другие падежи

я читаю интересную книгу я знаю	
Бориса	48

я читаю интересные книги

я знаю этих туристов	50
паспорт английского туриста	52
паспорт английских туристов	54
он позвонил нашему другу	56
мы идем к нашим друзьям	58
он идет в театр с русским другом	60
он идет в театр с русскими	
друзьями	62
мы живем в новом доме	64
он живет в новых домах	66

Long and short forms

- 34 Long and short forms

полные и краткие формы

ресторан закрыт	68
-----------------	----

The comparative

- 35 Long form comparative
 36 Short form comparative
 37 Constructions with the comparative

сравнительная степень

это более интересная книга	70
моей книга интереснее	72
он старше меня	74

The superlative

- 38 Superlative

превосходная степень

самый красивый язык	76
---------------------	----

THE ADVERB

- 39 Adverbs
 40 Adverbs: comparative and superlative

наречие

он быстро бегает	78
он бегает быстрее всех	80

NUMERALS**числительные**

41	Cardinal numerals (1)	оди́н дом, пять кварти́р _____	82
42	Cardinal numerals (2)	две́х, трёх, пяты́ _____	84
43	Cardinal numerals (3)	в двух больших городáх _____	86
44	Ordinal numerals	пéрвый, вторóй, трéтий _____	88
45	Telling the time	два часá, пять часóв, полвторóго _____	90
46	Dates	21-ое апрéля _____	92
47	Prices, ages, weights and measurements	35 рубléй, двáдцать килогráммов	94

PRONOUNS**местоимéния**

48	Personal pronouns (1)	я, ты, он, она́, онó, мы, вы, они́ _____	96
49	Personal pronouns (2)	мне, мной _____	98
50	Possessive pronouns	это тво́я книга? Да, мой _____	100
51	Interrogative pronouns	что? кто? какóй? чей? _____	102
52	Demonstrative pronouns	этот журнáл _____	104
53	Determinative pronouns	вся грúппа _____	106
54	Reflexive pronouns	он берёт с собой фотоаппарат _____	108
55	Relative pronouns (1)	врач, который работает в больнице _____	110
56	Relative pronouns (2)	что, кто, чей _____	112
57	Indefinite pronouns	кто-то позвонил _____	114

VERBS**глагóлы**

58	Regular present tense (1)	рабóтать _____	116
59	Regular present tense (2)	говорить _____	118
60	Present tense: consonant changes	я вýжу, я люблó _____	120
61	Irregular present tense (1)	брать, жить, класть, идти _____	122
62	Irregular present tense (2)	éхать, мочь, писáть, хотéть _____	124
63	Verbs ending in -авать/-овать/-евать; <i>to be</i> and <i>to have</i>	давáть, танцевáть; Аня – врач, у неё дочь _____	126
64	Reflexive verbs: present tense	умывáться _____	128
65	Aspects: imperfective and perfective infinitives	писáть/написáть _____	130
66	Future tense (1) compound future	я бúду рабóтать _____	132
67	Future tense (2) simple future	я напишú письмо _____	134
68	Past tense (1): imperfective	он всегдá игрáл _____	136
69	Past tense (2): perfective	вчérá она́ купíла машину _____	138
70	Verbs of motion	ходíть/идти, éздить/éхать _____	140

TY BEGINNER'S RUSSIAN GRAMMAR

71	Prefixed verbs of motion	Ольга выходит из магазíна	142
72	Conditions (1): open	если бўдёт врёмя, пойдём в кинотеа́тр	144
73	Conditions (2): closed	если бы он знал!	146
74	The imperative	садíтесь, пожалуйста!	148
75	Negatives (1)	я никогда не смотрю телевíзор	150
76	Negatives (2)	мне нéчего дéлать	152
77	Possibility, impossibility, necessity and infinitive	мóжно, нáдо, нельзя	154
78	Indirect statement and question	он сказал, что придет	156
79	Indirect commands, advice and wishes	он хóчет, чтобы мы купíли машину	158
80	Purpose	чтобы	160
81	Impersonal constructions	мне кáжется	162

CONJUNCTIONS

82	Conjunctions	что, потому что	164
----	--------------	-----------------	-----

PREPOSITIONS

83	Prepositions: place and direction (1)	в, на, с	166
84	Prepositions: place and direction (2)	за, мéжду, над, пéред, под, о́коло, у	168
85	Prepositions: place and direction (3)	до, из, к, мýмо, от, по, чéрез	170
86	Time – seconds to days	в э́тот момéнт, в суббóту, по суббóтам	172
87	Time – weeks, months, years	на э́той недéле, в ма́рте, в э́том годú	174
88	Time – miscellaneous	во врёмя, до, за, назáд	176
89	Miscellaneous prepositions	пóсле, с, чéрез	178
90	Verbs followed by prepositions	без, в, для, за, кróме, на, о, по, при, прóтив,	180
	Key to exercises	я играю на кларнéте	182
	Glossary of grammatical terms		197
	Useful vocabulary		199

INTRODUCTION

Teach Yourself Beginner's Russian Grammar is a reference and a practice book in one. It is intended for learners with very little Russian, but will also be useful for anyone who feels they need more explanation and practice of basic Russian grammar. The explanations are clear and simple, and answers to the exercises are provided in the key at the end, making it an ideal book for self-study. The left-hand page of each unit introduces and explains one particular point of grammar, which can then be practised by doing the exercises on the right-hand page. At the end of most units you will find cross-references to other units on the same or related points.

How to use this book

You can either work through the book progressively, or dip into specific grammar points which you need to clarify and practise. You can select the grammar items you have found difficult while using the language, or units which supplement the material in the coursebook you are working with. You will find all the grammar points listed in the contents and/or index. There is also a glossary of grammatical terms at the end of the book. Most students of Russian find that they need lots of practise to help them master the case endings of nouns, adjectives and pronouns, so this book gives lots of opportunity for that (and that's why each case is treated separately, singular and plural – so you can just practise the points you feel you need to reassure yourself about). You will find it helps you to learn points of grammar if you say the examples on the left-hand pages out loud (and you can do the same with your answers to the exercises, of course). English translations are given for most of the examples on the left-hand pages and for most of the material used in the exercises.

Abbreviations:

sing.	singular	acc.	accusative
pl.	plural	gen.	genitive
masc.	masculine	dat.	dative
fem.	feminine	instr.	instrumental
adj.	adjective	prep.	prepositional
nom.	nominative	infin.	infinitive

The Cyrillic alphabet is made up of 33 letters. Here they are in their printed and handwritten forms.

ру́сский алфави́т – printed	ру́сский алфави́т – cursive
А а	a in father
Б б	b in bank
В в	v in visit
Г г	g in goat
Д д	d in daughter
Е е	ye in yet
Ё ё	yo in yonder
Ж ж	s in pleasure
З з	z in zoo
И и	ee in feet
Й й	y in boy
К к	k in kite
Л л	l in bottle
М м	m in motor
Н н	n in novel
О о	o in bore (when stressed; otherwise like a in sofa)
П п	p in peach
Р р	r in rat
С с	s in sip
Т т	t in tired
У у	oo in shoot
Ф ф	f in funny
Х х	ch in loch
Ц ц	ts in rats
Ч ч	ch in cheese
Ш ш	sh in sheep
Щ щ	shsh in English shampoo
ъ*	hard sign – makes a tiny pause between syllables
ы*	approximately like i in ill
ь*	soft sign – adds a soft, gentle 'y' sound after a consonant
Э э	e in let
Ю ю	u in university
Я я	ya in yard

1 The Cyrillic alphabet – Exercises

Match the Russian words on the left with their English meaning on the right.

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 компьютер | a floppy disk |
| 2 фло́ппи-диск | b laser printer |
| 3 ла́зерный прыйтер | c Internet |
| 4 програ́ммист | d computer programmer |
| 5 Интернэт | e computer |

The words in the following list all sound like their English equivalents. Fill in the missing letter from each word. (Cover up the list on the right unless you are stuck!)

- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 1 т_рист | tourist |
| 2 с_удент | student |
| 3 _урналист | journalist |
| 4 ба_кир | banker |
| 5 бале_йна | ballerina |
| 6 пи_нист | pianist |
| 7 про_фессор | professor |
| 8 а_триса | actress |
| 9 мéнедж_р | manager |
| 10 д_ктор | doctor |

Look at the following details of what's on television and answer the questions:

- 1 At what time is the dog show?
- 2 On which channel is there a film about Hollywood?

1 ОРТ	2 НТВ
10.15 Макси-шоу	10.00 Сегодня
10.40 Каламбур. Юмористический журнал	10.25 Сериал «Комиссар Рекс»
11.25 Сериал «Дженни едет в Голливуд»	11.30 Дог-шоу «Я и моя собака»
12.00 Новости	12.00 Сегодня

2 UNIT Stress and spelling rules

The importance of the stressed syllable; some spelling rules which will apply to all forms of words (e.g. nouns, adjectives, verbs).

- A** If a Russian word has more than one syllable, it is important in terms of both pronunciation and grammar to know which syllable is 'stressed'. For example, in the Russian word for *engineer* there are three syllables: инженéр and the accent over the relevant letter (é) shows you that the third syllable is the one to emphasise. The good news is that you never need to write the 'stress mark' in – it's just there to help you, while you're learning. In this book stress marks are always indicated, unless an exercise is based on a real advertisement or ticket, as you would not normally see them in printed materials.

Of course, Russian isn't the only language where emphasis is important. In English, emphasising the wrong part of the word can sometimes change the meaning (think of *record* and *record*), and there are many words where it would sound odd if we emphasised each syllable equally (think how we emphasise the first syllable of *ever*, *everything* and *father* and how we 'throw away' the second or the second and third). This is what happens in Russian: pronounce the stressed syllable clearly and deliberately, but skim over the others – don't give them any emphasis (much as we deal with the last syllable, the -er of *ever*). The stress mark is perhaps most important of all in words which feature the letter o. If the o occurs in a word of only one syllable, or if it is the stressed syllable in a word composed of several syllables, then it will be pronounced, like o in 'bore':

нос nose новый new

If the letter o is not stressed it is pronounced like the 'a' in 'sofa', for example, хорошо́ *good*.

B Spelling rules

Remember! There are two important spelling rules in Russian:

- 1 Never write ы, ю, я after г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ; instead write и, у, а
- 2 Never write an unstressed o after ж, ч, ш, щ, ц

In order to apply Rule 2 accurately, it is important to know which syllable of a word is stressed. Unfortunately, there is no foolproof way of knowing where a word is stressed... other than to make a point of learning where the stress is when you first come across the word!

2 Stress and spelling rules

- Exercises

Here is a list of 15 of the words you have seen in stressed form so far in Units 1 and 2. Mark in their stresses and, when you have checked your answers in the Key, practise saying each word.

актриса	<i>actress</i>
балерина	<i>ballerina</i>
банкир	<i>banker</i>
доктор	<i>doctor</i>
журналист	<i>journalist</i>
компьютер	<i>computer</i>
менеджер	<i>manager</i>
новый	<i>new</i>
пианист	<i>pianist</i>
программист	<i>computer programmer</i>
профессор	<i>professor</i>
собака	<i>dog</i>
студент	<i>student</i>
турист	<i>tourist</i>
хорошо	<i>good</i>

Vladimir has been writing a story for homework, but has made five serious spelling mistakes. Underline and explain them. (A translation of Vladimir's masterpiece can be found in the Key.)

Ваня наконец спрашивает Машу
«Где собаки? Почему они молчат?»

Маша не отвечает, Ваня берёт
свои книги и уходит к другу, Саше.



3

UNIT

Gender of nouns

Nouns are words which name someone or something (people, places, animals, objects, concepts). All Russian nouns have a gender.

- A** Russian words are divided randomly into three groups, known as ‘genders’. These groups are *masculine*, *feminine* and *neuter*. Russian has no direct article (*the*) or indirect article (*a*), so we have to look at the ending of each word to determine its gender.

Gender	Endings	Example	
Masculine (dictionary symbol м)	consonant й ь	журнал музéй автомобíль	magazine museum car
Feminine (dictionary symbol ж)	а я и я ь	газéта недéля Россíя дочь	newspaper week Russia daughter
Neuter (dictionary symbol cp)	о е и е	мéсто пóле здáние	place field building

- B** So, the only ending ‘shared’ by more than one gender is the soft sign (ь). These are the only nouns where you have to *learn* the gender, but they are a small group (and three-quarters of them are feminine); often they are ‘naturally’ masculine or feminine – e.g. царь (*tsar*) is masculine and дочь (*daughter*) is feminine.

- B** It will be helpful when you are learning case endings to distinguish between feminine nouns which end in я and those which end in ия as they often behave differently (and similarly for neuter nouns ending in е and ие).

- Г** There are a few exceptions to these patterns.

- The following nouns are masculine (because of their meaning):

дéушка	grandfather	мужчíна	man
дáя	uncle	пáпа	daddy
- The diminutive form of men’s first names have feminine endings (e.g. Алексáндр → Сáша).
- Nouns ending in -мя are neuter (*врёмя, time*); кóфе is masculine.

3

5

**Gender of nouns –
Exercises**

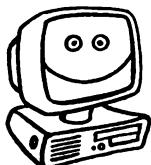
1 Look at the endings of the words that follow and decide on their gender; write **м**, **ж** or **ср** (or if you prefer to do it in English: **m**, **f**, or **n**) in the brackets which follow each word.

1	ráдио	radio	()	6	письмо́	letter	()
2	телеvisor	television	()	7	дéрево	tree	()
3	мáрка	stamp	()	8	дочь	daughter	()
4	кúхня	kitchen	()	9	царь	tsar	()
5	Áнглия	England	()	10	герóй	hero	()

2 Match the words from the box to the pictures and indicate the gender (**м**, **ж**, **ср**).

лáмпа	ráдио	собáка	автомобíль	компью́тер	дéрево
-------	-------	--------	------------	------------	--------

1



2



3



4



5



6



3 There is one 'rogue' word in each of the following gender lists. Which words are in the wrong lists and which list should they be in?

M

пáспорт	passport
документ	document
месяц	month
вýза	visa
гóд	guide
юноша	young man

Ж

медиcтрапá	nurse
инженéр	engineer
биолóгия	biology
шкóла	school
газéта	newspaper
декларáция	declaration

СР

окнó	window
место	place
понимáние	understanding
энéргия	energy
метрó	metro
письмо́	letter

Cases show the roles that nouns play in a sentence. There are six cases in Russian and the endings of nouns change according to their case. The nominative case shows us who or what is performing the action of a verb (the subject); singular means there's only one actor/subject.

- A** The nominative case of a noun is the form you find in a dictionary, vocabulary or glossary.

год (м) year школа (ж) school свидание (ср) appointment, date

The endings for each gender are: masculine: consonant, й, ь

feminine: а, я, ия, ь

neuter: о, е, ие

- B** The nominative case 'names' the person or the thing doing the action of the verb.

Subject – nominative case	Verb	Meaning
Студент	читает	<i>The student is reading</i>
Ольга	работает	<i>Olga is working</i>
Письмо	лежит (на столе)	<i>The letter is lying (on the table)</i>

- B** Since there are no words for *the* or *a* in Russian, a noun in the nominative case can mean either:

месяц (м) *a month or the month* медсестра (ж) *a nurse or the nurse*
окно (ср) *a window or the window*

- C** Since there is no present tense of the verb 'to be' in Russian, the nominative case will appear with no apparent verb.

Subject – nominative case	(No verb to be)	Meaning
Борис	студент	<i>Boris (is a) student</i>
Медсестра	очень добрая	<i>(The) nurse (is) very kind</i>
Письмо	интересное	<i>(The) letter (is) interesting</i>

- D** Russian word order is very flexible, so the subject is not always at the beginning of a sentence or phrase. The word order may be the same as English:

The lecture begins at seven o'clock.

Лекция начинается в семь часов.

or the subject may appear later in the phrase (without affecting the meaning):

В семь часов начинается лекция.

4 N 5

Nominative singular – Exercises

1 Look at the English sentences that follow and underline the subject of each sentence.

e.g. Moscow is the capital of Russia.

- 1 My husband works in the centre of town.
- 2 Viktor always stays at home on a Friday evening.
- 3 Is Olga a journalist?
- 4 Where is the dog?
- 5 Does the student know the new teacher?

2 Look at the Russian sentences that follow and underline the subject of each sentence (translations of these sentences are given in the Key):

e.g. Обычно Владимир отдыхает в Ялте.

- 1 Собака играет в саду.
- 2 Театр очень красивый.
- 3 Когда начинается концерт?
- 4 Где мой книга?
- 5 Мой сын очень хороший футболист.

3 Complete the following sentences with the appropriate nominative singular noun, using the English sentences as a guide.

e.g. _____ начинается в семь часов. *The concert begins at seven o'clock.* (Концерт начинается в семь часов)

- 1 _____ не очень интересная. *The lecture is not very interesting.*
- 2 К сожалению это _____ не свободно. *Unfortunately this place is not free.*
- 3 _____ читает книгу по физике. *The student is reading a book on physics.*
- 4 _____ смотрит телевизор. *Grandfather is watching television.*
- 5 _____ дорогое стоит. *The car is (costs) expensive.*
- 6 Где находится _____? *Where is (situated) the stadium?*

5 UNIT Nominative plural

If you want to talk about more than one subject, you use the plural. In Russian there are different forms of the plural, depending on the gender of the noun.

A Regular masculine nouns end in either a consonant, -й or -ь. The plural ending depends on which of these three kinds of noun you are using:

To a consonant, add ы: студéнт → студéнты students

Remove ѹ, then add и: музéй → музéи museums

Remove ь, then add и: автомобíль → автомобíли cars

B Regular feminine nouns end in either -а, -я, -ия or ь. The plural ending depends on which of these four kinds of noun you are dealing with:

Remove а, add ы: актрíса → актрíсы actresses

Remove я, add и: недéля → недéли weeks

стáнция → стáнции stations

Remove ь, add и: дверь → дvéри doors

NB For plurals of feminine nouns which end in -а, remember: never write ы after г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ. So, for example, книга → книгы books.

B Regular neuter nouns end in either -о, -е or -ие. The plural ending depends on which of these three kinds of noun you are dealing with:

Remove о, add а: мéсто → местá places

Remove е, add я: здáние → здáния buildings

C The stress in some regular nouns changes in the nominative plural, as you can see in the word мéсто. This can happen in all genders. For example:

Masculine: стол (table) → столы старíк (old man) → старики

Feminine: игрá (game) → íгры рукá (hand, arm) руки

сестрá (sister) → сестры

Neuter: окнó (window) → óкна морé (sea) → моря

Dictionaries usually indicate any movement of stress in the Russian–English section and the best thing is to look out for this when you first come across a word (and try to learn it by saying both singular and plural out loud).

D Some regular nouns ‘lose’ a vowel from their last syllable in all forms except nominative singular. Some common ones are: отéц → отцы (fathers); ковёр → ковры (carpets); цéрковь → цéркви (churches).

5

Nominative plural –
Exercises

1 In the following sentences which nouns are in the plural form? Underline them. (Translations of these sentences are given in the Key.)

- 1 Больше всего Виктор любит читать газеты.
- 2 Марки дрого стоят.
- 3 Я не знаю, где компьютеры.
- 4 Да, я часто смотрю кинофильмы.
- 5 Я не понимаю, почему он смотрит телесериалы.

2 Match up each noun with a suitable plural ending.

e.g. концерт + ы → концерты

-ы	-и	-а	-я
----	----	----	----

1 балерина	<i>ballerina</i>	6 свидание	<i>appointment</i>
2 журналист	<i>journalist</i>	7 инженер	<i>engineer</i>
3 собака	<i>dog</i>	8 месяц	<i>month</i>
4 самолёт	<i>'plane</i>	9 бутылка	<i>bottle</i>
5 история	<i>story</i>	10 письмо	<i>letter</i>

3 Write the plural form of the following nouns.

1 жёнщина	<i>woman</i>	6 лошадь (ж)	<i>horse</i>
2 мальчик	<i>boy</i>	7 море	<i>sea</i>
3 девушка	<i>girl</i>	8 декларация (<i>currency</i>)	<i>declaration</i>
4 мужчина	<i>man</i>	9 здание	<i>building</i>
5 кошка	<i>cat</i>	10 герой	<i>hero</i>

4 Match the sentences on the left with the appropriate nominative plural noun phrase on the right.

- 1 Ольга и Виктор играют в теннис.
 - 2 Они берут интервью.
 - 3 Они любят компьютеры.
- | |
|--------------------|
| a Они журналисты |
| b Они программисты |
| c Они теннисисты |

6

UNIT | Nominative plural
irregular

Some nouns do not work in the way described in Unit 5. Fortunately, irregular plural nouns in Russian fit into convenient groups.

- A** One group of irregular masculine nouns all behave in the same way. Instead of ending in ы or и they must end in a stressed á (or, in the case of учитель, a stressed á). Here are the most common nouns which behave in this way:

адрес	→ адреса́	addresses	нóмер	→нóмера́	hotel rooms
бéрег	→ берега́	banks/shores	о́стров	→островá	islands
вéчер	→ вечера́	evenings/parties	пáспорт	→пáпорта́	passports
глаз	→ глаза́	eyes	пóезд	→поездá	trains
гóрод	→ городá	towns	профéссор	→профессорá	professors
дом	→ домá	houses	тráктор	→тракторá	tractors
дóктор	→ доктора́	doctors	учитель	→учителá	teachers
лес	→ леса́	forests	цвет	→цветá	colours

Try not to confuse the last word on this list with the plural noun цветы (*flowers*, singular: цветóк).

- B** A second group of masculine nouns takes the nominative plural ending -ья:

брат	→ бра́тья	brothers	ли́ст	→ ли́стья	leaves
друг	→ дру́зья	friends	стул	→ сту́лья	chairs
сын	→ сыновья́	sons			

- C** A third group of masculine nouns ends in the singular in -анин or -янин. To make the nominative plural of these nouns, simply remove -ин and add -е: англичáин → англичáне *Englishmen* гражданýн → граждане *citizen*

- D** Feminine and neuter nouns have very few irregulars. The most common are:

дочь (ж)	→ до́чери	daughters	колéно (ср)	→ колéни	knees
мать (ж)	→ ма́тери	mothers	плéчи (ср)	→ плéчи	shoulders
врёмя (ср)	→ времéна	times	у́хо (ср)	→ ушí	ears
дерéво (ср)	→ дерéвья	trees	яблоко (ср)	→ яблоки	apples
имя (ср)	→ именá	names			

The good news is that some neuter nouns do not change at all in the plural, so the following are both the singular and the plural forms:

бюро́	office	метро́	metro	таксí	taxi
вíски	whisky	пиани́но	piano		
каfé	cafe	rádio	radio		

Note that all these ‘indeclinable’ words (ie words that do not change) have been borrowed by Russian from western European languages.

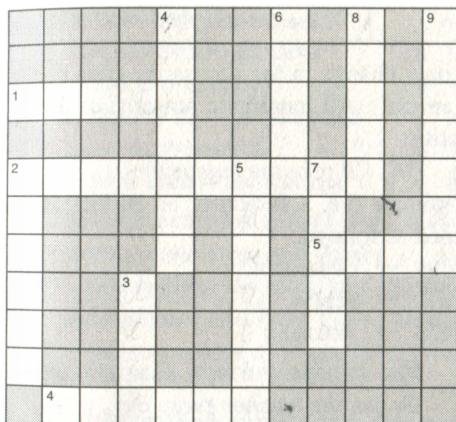
- E** The nouns for ‘children’ and ‘people’ are the most strikingly irregular of all: ребёнок → дéти *children* человéк → людí *people*

6 Nominative plural irregular – Exercises

1 Translate the following irregular nominative plural words into Russian.

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1 brothers | 6 eyes |
| 2 names | 7 trees |
| 3 children | 8 friends |
| 4 mothers | 9 people |
| 5 addresses | 10 towns |

2 Кроссворд



По вертикалі

- 2 More than one train
- 3 Lots of forests
- 4 Plural of teacher
- 5 More than one son
- 6 Underground railway(s)
- 7 Radio(s)
- 8 More than one colour
- 9 Times

По горизонталі

- 1 Scottish drink in singular or plural
- 2 More than one top university teacher
- 4 Not sisters, but...
- 5 More than one house

7 UNIT Accusative singular

The accusative case is used for the direct object of a sentence. The direct object is the person or thing that has an action done to it.

A Most sentences include the formula

Subject (person or thing performing an action) + Verb (action performed)
+ Object (person or thing that has action done to it)

Subject	Verb	Object	Meaning
Анна	смóтрит	телевíзор	<i>Anna is watching television</i>
Борис	читáет	газéту	<i>Boris is reading the newspaper</i>
Мы	слушаem	rádio	<i>We are listening to the radio</i>

B In the singular, masculine nouns only change in the accusative case if they are animate (i.e. a person or an animal). All inanimate nouns (i.e. things) remain the same as in the nominative:

Хорошо, я возьмú журнáл. *OK, I'll take the magazine.*

If masculine singular nouns are animate (i.e. a person or an animal), their endings in the accusative are formed as follows:

To a consonant, add а: студéнт → студéнта

Remove ѹ, then add я: герóй → герóя

Remove ъ, then add я: учýтель → учýтеля

Вы знаеte Борíса? Мы вíдим учýтеля кáждый день.

Do you know Boris? *We see the teacher every day.*

B The overwhelming majority of neuter nouns are inanimate, and they do not change in the accusative case: Письмо интересное? Дáйте мне письмо, пожáлуйста. *Is the letter interesting? Give me the letter, please.* A common animate neuter noun is лицó (when it means *person*, not *face*); its animate accusative is лицá.

C Feminine singular nouns always change in the accusative case, whether animate or inanimate, except for soft-sign nouns (eg дверь door). Accusative endings of feminine nouns are formed as follows:

Remove а, add у: актрыса → актрысу

Remove я, add ю: недéля → недéлю

Soft sign stays the same: дверь → двéрь

Вы знаеte Татьяну? *Do you know Tatyana?*

► For use of accusative with prepositions, see Units 83, 84,
85, 86, 88, 89, 90.

7

Accusative singular – Exercises

1 Underline the object noun in each of the following sentences.

e.g. Always buy comfortable shoes.

- 1 I often watch the television.
- 2 Pass the water, please.
- 3 Have you seen the cat anywhere?
- 4 I've never visited the Kremlin.
- 5 He bought the least expensive watch available.

2 Match the two halves of each sentence, then find the English translation below.

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Я предпочитаю физику | a но его брата я не знаю. |
| 2 Я знаю его сестру, | b Аню и Вадима |
| 3 Вы видите аптеку направо | c и врачá. |
| 4 Я хочу пригласить | d и не люблю химию. |
| 5 Мы уже знаем медсестру | e и почту налево? |

- 1 I know his sister, but I don't know his brother.
- 2 I want to invite Anya and Vadim.
- 3 We already know the nurse and the doctor.
- 4 I prefer physics and I don't like chemistry.
- 5 Do you (can you) see the chemist's on the right and the post office on the left?

3 Put the following words into the accusative case.

e.g. инженер → инженера

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1 дочь (ж) | daughter |
| 2 бабушка | grandmother |
| 3 мать (ж) | mother |
| 4 дядя | uncle |
| 5 тётя | aunt |
| 6 стол | table |
| 7 поле | field |
| 8 открытка | postcard |
| 9 лошадь (ж) | horse |
| 10 брат | brother |

8

UNIT Accusative plural

If a plural noun is the object in a phrase or sentence its endings must change. The endings depend on whether the noun is animate (a person or an animal) or inanimate (a thing).

- A** The good news is that if a noun is inanimate, the ending for the accusative plural is exactly the same as the ending for the nominative plural. This applies to all three genders.

Subject	Verb	Object	Meaning
Анна	смótрит	фильмы	<i>Anna watches films</i>
Борис	читáет	газéты	<i>Boris reads newspapers</i>
Мы	моbем	óкна	<i>We are cleaning the windows</i>

- B** If a noun is animate, then its ending must change. The animate accusative plural and the genitive plural are the only cases where the endings are different for the three genders. So, the bad news is that there are quite a few endings to learn for the animate accusative, but the good news is that by the time you get to Unit 11 you will already know the endings!

- C** Masculine animate accusative plural:

To a consonant, add **ов** студéнт → студéтов

Remove **й**, then add **ев** герóй (*hero*) → герóев

Remove **ь**, then add **ей** писáтель (*writer*) → писáтелей

Care is needed if the masculine singular nominative ends in **ж**, **ч**, **ш**, **щ**. If it does, add **ей**, not **ов**: e.g. врач (*doctor*) → врачéй.

- D** Feminine animate accusative plural:

Remove **а**, add nothing актрíса → актрíс

Remove **я**, add **ь**: сóня (*dormouse*) → сонь

For nouns ending in **ия**, remove **я**, add **й**: Марíя → Марíй

Remove **ь**, add **ей**: лóшадь (*horse*) → лошадéй

Care is needed with feminine nouns ending in **а**. If you are left with a cluster of consonants when you have removed the **-a** you usually need to insert the vowel **о**, **е** or (very occasionally) **ё**. Three common examples you might find in the animate accusative are: дéвушка → дéвушек, мáрка → мáрок, сестrá → сестéр

Вы знаéте этих дéвушек? Do you know these girls?

Нет, но я знаó их сестéр. No, but I know their sisters.

- E** There are *very* few neuter animate nouns. A common one is лицó (when it means *person*). The animate accusative plural is formed simply by removing the last letter.

► For formation of irregular animate accusative plural see Unit 9; for genitive plural nouns see Unit 11.

8 | Accusative plural of regular nouns – Exercises

1 Underline the plural nouns in the following sentences which would need to be in the inanimate accusative in Russian and circle those which should be in the animate accusative.

e.g. Have you ever seen these actors and these plays before?

- 1 We always like to watch the boats and the seagulls when we are by the sea.
- 2 I forgot to buy tickets for the concert.
- 3 Please send the customers and their purchases to the cash desk.
- 4 Do you prefer to read books or newspapers?
- 5 She says she's going to get two dogs.

2 Write sentences saying what you want to buy, adding the correct accusative plural ending to each singular noun (they're all inanimate).

e.g. билéт (*ticket*) → Я хочу купить билéты

- 1 телефон
- 2 здáние
- 3 бутылка
- 4 поле
- 5 мáрка

3 Write sentences saying who you know, adding the correct accusative plural ending to each singular noun (they're all animate).

e.g. турíст → Я знаю турíстов

- 1 инженéр
- 2 медсестrá
- 3 футбóлист
- 4 балерíна
- 5 врач

4 Explain who or what you're photographing by putting each singular noun in the accusative plural (animate or inanimate?).

e.g. собóр (*cathedral*) → Я фотографирую собóры

- | | |
|-------------|----------|
| 1 корóва | cow |
| 2 музыка́нт | musician |
| 3 лóдка | boat |
| 4 магазíн | shop |
| 5 пти́ца | bird |

9 UNIT Accusative plural of irregular nouns

Some nouns do not work in the way described in Unit 8. Fortunately, irregular accusative plural nouns fit into convenient groups (just like irregular nominative plural nouns).

- A Nouns which have irregular endings still follow the same pattern for the accusative plural outlined in Unit 8: if a noun is inanimate, the ending for the accusative plural is exactly the same as the ending for the nominative plural.

Он знаёт все адреса.

He knows all the addresses

Вы купили стулья?

Did you buy the chairs?

- B Animate nouns which have an irregular nominative plural ending in a stressed á take -óv in the accusative plural: Я ужé знаю профессорóв. The irregular nominative plural учителá becomes учителéй.

- C If animate nouns have an irregular nominative plural ending in -ья, then the accusative plural ending is either -ьев (if the nominative plural is stressed on the stem) or -ей (if the nominative plural is stressed on the end):

Nominative singular	Nominative plural	Accusative plural
брать brother	брáтья nom. pl. stressed on stem	брáтьев
друг friend	дру́зья nom. pl. stressed on end	дру́зей
сын son	сыновь́я nom. pl. stressed on end	сыновéй

- D For animate nouns whose nominative singular ends in -нин, this is what happens:

Nominative singular	Nominative plural	Accusative plural
англичáин	англичáне	англичáн
гражданий	гráждане	гráждан

- E The accusative plural of the irregular feminine nouns мать and дочь are:

Nominative singular	Nominative plural	Accusative plural
дочь	дóчери	дочерéй
мать	мáтери	матерéй

- F And finally, the accusative plural for ‘children’ and ‘people’ comes from their strikingly different nominative plural form:

Nominative singular	Nominative plural	Accusative plural
ребёнок	дéти	детéй
человéк	лóди	людéй

► For formation of irregular nominative plural, see Unit 6.

For animate accusative plural of regular nouns, see Unit 8.

9

N

Accusative plural of irregular nouns – Exercises

1 Ask about people's preferences by putting the nouns given below into the accusative plural:

e.g. лес/остров → Что вы любите больше, леса или острова?

- 1 дерево/берег
- 2 поезд/трактор
- 3 стул/цвет
- 4 дом/город

2 Match the two halves of each sentence, then find the English translation in the sentences that follow.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 Он ужé знаёт | а англичáн в аэропортý. |
| 2 Вы вýдели ~ | б учителéй. |
| 3 Гид встрéтил ~ | с друзе́й в ресторáн. |
| 4 Нет, я не знаю | д братьев Владíмира. |
| 5 Онá чáсто приглашае́т ~ | е егó сыновéй вчера? |

- 1 *No, I don't know Vladimir's brothers.*
- 2 *She often invites friends to the restaurant.*
- 3 *Did you see his sons yesterday?*
- 4 *He already knows the teachers.*
- 5 *The guide met the Englishmen at the airport.*

3 Boris and Elena complete a questionnaire about their visit to England. They have made a list of what they have liked most (✓) and what they have liked least (✗). Complete the account of their visit by giving the accusative plural in Russian of their likes and dislikes (reminder больше = more; мénьше = less).

✓

towns
houses
people
hotel rooms

✗

trains
evenings

Мы туристы в Англии. Что мы любíли больше? Что мы любíли мénьше?

Мы любíли больше _____, _____,
_____, и _____.

Мы любíли мénьше _____ и _____.

10th Unit Genitive singular

The genitive case is the Russian way of saying 'of', so it indicates possession and is also used when talking about quantities.

- A** The principal meaning of the genitive case is *of*, but it is also used with quantities (e.g. *a lot*, *a bottle*, *not any*, and after the numerals 2, 3 and 4):

Это паспорт студента. *It is the passport of the student (the student's passport).*

Здесь нет телефона. *Here there is no (not any) telephone.*

- B** There are two possible endings for the genitive singular of masculine nouns: either **-а** or **-я**.

To a consonant, add **а**: лимонáд → лимонáда

Remove **й**, then add **я**: Сергéй → Сергéя

Remove **ь**, then add **я**: Йгорь → Йгоря

Вот бутылка лимонáда. *Here is a bottle of lemonade.*

Где пиджáк Сергéя? *Where is Sergei's jacket?*

Сергéй брат Йгоря. *Sergei is Igor's brother.*

- B** There are two possible endings for the genitive singular of feminine nouns: either **-ы** or **-и**.

Remove **а**, add **ы**: водá → воды

Remove **я**, add **и**: Россíя → Россíи

Remove **ь**, add **и**: свекрóвь → свекрóви

Дайте, пожалуйста, бутылку воды. *Give me a bottle of water, please.*

Москвá столицa Россíи. *Moscow is the capital of Russia.*

Remember: never write **ы** after **г**, **к**, **х**, **ж**, **ч**, **ш**, **щ** (e.g. **кóшка**→**кóшки** of the cat).

NB мать and дочь have irregular genitive singular forms: **мáтери** and **дóчери**.

- C** There are two possible endings for the genitive singular of neuter nouns: either **-а** or **-я**.

Remove **о**, add **а**: мéсто → мéста

Remove **е**, add **я**: здáние → здáния

пóле → пóля

Neuter words which end in **-мя** have the irregular ending **-мени**: врéмья → врéмени, ýмья → ýмени.

Здесь нет мéста. *There's no room (not any place) here.*

У менé нет врéмени! *I have no (not any) time!*

► For use of genitive case with prepositions, see Units 83, 84, 85, 88, 89, for use of genitive singular with numerals, see Units 41 and 45, for use of genitive with comparatives, see Unit 37.

1 In the following sentences which nouns would be in the genitive in Russian? Underline them.e.g. Have you seen Olga's book?

- 1 There isn't any cheese in the fridge.
- 2 I'd like half a kilo of ham, please.
- 3 Rome is the capital of Italy.
- 4 The tourist's passport is on the floor.
- 5 Igor's e-mail address is on this piece of paper.

2 Look at the drawings and then make up sentences to describe who owns what:

e.g. Это багаж Ольги.

1 Ольга/багаж

2 Борис/собака

3 Андрей/автомобиль

4 Анна/телефон

5 Игорь/радио

**3 Complete the phrases by putting the word in brackets into the genitive singular.**

1 Бутылка	(вино)	<i>a bottle of wine</i>
2 Полкило	(сыр)	<i>half a kilo of cheese</i>
3 Банка	(икра)	<i>a jar/tin of caviar</i>
4 Пачка	(чай)	<i>a packet of tea</i>
5 Бутылка	(водка)	<i>a bottle of vodka</i>

4 The restaurant has run out of everything – the waiter is explaining what isn't on the menu. Complete his statements by putting the word in brackets into the genitive singular.e.g. курица → У нас нет курьцы. *We haven't got any chicken.*1 У нас нет _____ (ветчина). *We haven't got any ham.*2 У нас нет _____ (пиво). *We haven't got any beer.*3 У нас нет _____ (хлеб). *We haven't got any bread.*4 У нас нет _____ (говядина). *We haven't got any beef.*5 У нас нет _____ (шоколад). *We haven't got any chocolate.*

11 UNIT Genitive plural

The genitive plural has different endings for each gender. You need this case if you want to say, for example, 'a big group of tourists'.

- A There are three endings for the genitive plural of masculine nouns: -ов, -ев, -ей.

NB If a masculine word ends in ж, ч, ш, щ, add ей, not ов: e.g. нож (knife) → ножей.

Nominative singular	Genitive plural
туріст	туристов
трамвай	трамвáев
портфель	портфéлей

- B There are four endings for the genitive plural of feminine nouns: – (i.e. the final a is removed), -ь, -й, -ей.

Nominative singular	Genitive plural
шкóла	школ
недéля	недéль
стáнция	стáнций
дверь	дверéй

NB If the feminine word ends in -a and when you remove it you are left with a consonant 'cluster' (i.e. more than one), it is sometimes necessary to insert either o, ё or e (e if the 'cluster' you are left with is жк, чк, шк). E.g.:

Nominative singular	Genitive plural
мáрка	мáрок

- B There are two endings for the genitive plural of neuter nouns: – (i.e. the final o is removed) and -й:

Nominative singular	Genitive plural
мéсто	мест
пóле	полéй
здáние	здáний

NB If the neuter word ends in -o and when you remove it you are left with a consonant 'cluster' (i.e. more than one), it is sometimes necessary to insert either o or e. Two very common examples are окно (window) → окон and письмо (letter) → пíсем (notice that here the e replaces ѿ).



Genitive plural – Exercises

1 Underline the words in the following sentences which are in the genitive plural.

e.g. Он купил много сувениров. *He bought a lot of souvenirs.*

- 1 В классе много мальчиков. *There are many boys in the class.*
- 2 Вот документы студентов. *Here are the students' documents.*
- 3 Он дал мне много книг. *He gave me a lot of books.*
- 4 У нас нет писем. *We have no letters.*
- 5 Полкило помидоров, пожалуйста. *Half a kilo of tomatoes, please.*

2 Give the genitive plural of the following nominative singular nouns.

e.g. сумка → сумок

1 час	hour	6 море	sea
2 река	river	7 гостиница	hotel
3 музей	museum	8 няня	nanny
4 танцёр	dancer	9 герой	hero
5 дверь (ж)	door	10 строитель	builder

3 Complete the shopping list by putting the word in brackets into the genitive plural.

1 полкилограмм	(апельсин)	half a kilo of oranges.
2 коробка	(конфеты)	a box of sweets
3 коробка	(спички)	a box of matches.
4 пачка	(сигареты)	a packet of cigarettes.
5 гроздь	(банан)	a bunch of bananas.

4 Put the words in column A into the genitive plural, then match them up with the words in column B in order to produce the meaning in column C.

e.g. А мальчик В группа С a group of boys → группа мальчиков

A	B	C
мальчик	группа	a group of boys
документ	нет	1 lots of stations
марка	группа	2 a bunch of roses
врач	много	3 there are no stamps
роза	пачка	4 a group of doctors
станция	букет	5 a bundle of documents

12 UNIT Genitive plural irregular

There are a number of very common nouns which have irregular forms in the genitive plural.

- A** The important thing is to know which nouns have irregular nominative plurals, because their genitive plural forms will be based on this.
- B** This is what happens to masculine nouns in the genitive plural: if the nominative plural ends in stressed á, then the genitive plural ending is óв (so not strikingly irregular, just be aware of the stressed ending).
- If the nominative plural ends in:
- ъя and the word is stressed on the stem, the genitive plural ending is -ьев
 - stressed ъя, then the genitive plural ending is -éй
 - не, then the genitive plural ending is... nothing!

Nominative singular	Nominative plural	Genitive plural
гóрод town	городá	городóв
стул chair	стулья	стульев
друг friend	друзъя	друзéй
англичанин Englishman	англичáне	англичáн

- B** There are very few irregular genitive plural endings for feminine nouns. The most common are the words for *mother* and *daughter*:

мать → матерéй dochь → дочерéй

NB Some feminine nouns with a 'cluster of consonants' before their ending form their genitive plural by inserting the letter ё:

звездá (star) → звёзд, сестрá (sister) → сестрёп, серыгá (ear-ring) → серёг

- C** Although a number of common neuter nouns have irregular nominative plural forms, only a few have irregular genitive plurals, e.g.:

врёмя (time) → времён ухо (ear) → ушéй

имя (name) → имён

- D** And finally, the genitive plural for 'children' and 'people' comes from their strikingly different nominative plural form:

Nominative singular	Nominative Plural	Genitive plural
ребёнок	дёти	детéй
человéк	люди	людéй

NB After a numeral the genitive plural of *человéк* is *человéк* (5 *человéк*, 5 *people*).



Genitive plural irregular – Exercises

1 You are showing your holiday photographs. Explain what they are of by putting each noun into the genitive plural.

e.g. друг → Вот фотографии друзей. *Here are photographs of friends.*

1 брат	6 англичанин
2 дерево	7 сын
3 ребёнок	8 дочь
4 звезда	9 гражданин
5 город	10 лист

2 If you want to buy quantities of things, you'll need the genitive plural. Make sentences by using the following words (NB a mixture of regular and irregular).

e.g. конфета → Я хочу купить много конфет. *I want to buy a lot of sweets.*

1 стул	chair
2 апельсин	orange
3 открытка	postcard
4 блузка	blouse
5 конверт	envelope
6 ручка	pen
7 сувенир	souvenir
8 дом	house
9 яблоко	apple
10 письмо	letter

3 The following words are in the genitive plural. Put them into the nominative singular (NB another mixture of regular and irregular).

e.g. адресов → адрес

1 листьев
2 матерей
3 гостей
4 англичан
5 фотографий
6 ушей
7 булок
8 автомобилей
9 времён
10 людей

13^{UNIT} Dative singular

The principal meaning of the dative case is to or for. It is used for the indirect object (the person or thing that is shown, told etc. something). The dative case also follows some common verbs, e.g. помогать (to help), звонить (to ring).

- A The dative case is needed for the indirect object of a sentence:

Subject + Verb + Object + Indirect object

Vadim gave a bunch of roses to Katya

Вадим дал букет роз Кате



- B There are two endings for the dative singular of masculine nouns: -y and -ю.

Nominative singular	Dative singular
брат brother	брáту
Сергей	Сергéю
учитель teacher	учíтелью

- C There are two endings for the dative singular of feminine nouns: -e and -и.

Nominative singular	Dative singular
сестра sister	сестрé
Катя	Катé
Мария	Марái

NB The two most common irregular dative feminine forms are for *mother* and *daughter*: мать → матери and дочь → дочери.

- D There are two endings for the dative singular of neuter nouns: -y and -ю.

Nominative singular	Dative singular
окно window	окнý
море sea	мóрю
здания building	зданио

NB The neuter words вре́мя and ю́мя form their dative singular as follows: вре́мя → вре́мени; ю́мя → ю́мени.

> For use of dative case with prepositions, see Units 85 and 89; for use of dative with expressions of possibility, impossibility and necessity, see Unit 77; for use of dative with impersonal verbs, see Unit 81.



Dative singular – Exercises

1 Which of the words in the following passage are in the dative singular? Underline them.

e.g. Онá звонít инженéру кáждый день. *She rings the engineer every day.*

Борýс никогдá не помогáет дрúгу, Вíктору. Еíсли у Вíктора проблемá, он звонít тéте юли дáде. Дáя лóбит помогáть племýннику.

Boris never helps (his) friend. If Viktor has a problem, he rings (his) aunt or uncle. (His) uncle likes to help (his) nephew.

2 Who gave what to whom? Make sentences using the words given (the direct objects – the presents – have already been put into the accusative case for you; the meaning of your completed sentence is on the right).

e.g. Сергéй/рúчку/Елéна → Сергéй дал рúчку Елéне.

Sergei gave a pen to Elena.

Елéна/носкí/Сергéй → Елéна далá носкí Сергéю.

Elena gave socks to Sergei.

1 Он/книгú/Светлáна

He gave a book to Svetlana.

2 Дочь/духý/мать

The daughter gave perfume to (her) mother.

3 Он/цветы́/медсестrá

He gave flowers to the nurse.

4 Аня/мотоцикль/Андрéй

Anya gave Andrei a motorbike.

5 Онá/письмо́/дирéктор

She gave the letter to the director.

3 Put the following words into the dative singular.

1 врач

doctor

6 Итáлия

Italy

2 журнали́ст

journalist

7 Зóя

Zoya

3 Ѝгорь (м)

Igor

8 кúхня

kitchen

4 по́ле

field

9 писáтель

writer

5 улица

street

10 свекróвь (ж)

mother-in-law

4 Complete the passage by putting the words in brackets into the dative singular.

Вадíм звонít _____ (мать), _____ (Татьяна) кáждый день в 4 часá. Он чáсто звонít _____ (брат), _____ (Константи́н) и _____ (друг), _____ (Антóн).

14 UNIT Dative plural

If the indirect object of a sentence is plural then its ending must change to the dative plural; it must also change to the dative if the noun follows those verbs which always take the dative (e.g. помочь, to help, звонить, to ring and советовать, to advise).

A The dative plural endings for nouns are the same for all genders. There are two possible endings (-ам, or -ям) and to determine which one should be used, look at the last letter of the nominative singular.

B The ending for dative plural nouns ending in a consonant, -а or -о in the nominative singular is -ам. Add this ending to nouns ending in a consonant; to nouns ending in -а or -о, remove the last letter of the nominative singular, then add -ам, for example:

спортсмén → Врач совéтует спортсмéнам. *The doctor advises the sportsmen.*

сестrá → Брат совéтует сёстрам. *The brother advises (his) sisters.*

B The ending for dative plural nouns which end in anything else in the nominative singular (i.e. -й, -ь, -я, -ия, -е, -ие) is -ям. Remove the last letter of the nominative singular and add -ям, for example:

герóй → Президéнт дал герóям *The president gave medals to the heroes.*

стройтель → Банкир совéтует стройтeлям. *The banker advises the builders.*

Г Nouns which have irregular nominative plurals form their dative plural from the nominative plural:

Nominative singular	Nominative plural	Dative plural
друг	друзъ́я	друзъ́ям
ребёнок	дёти	дётям
человéк	лóди	лóдям

The words дочь, вре́мя and и́мя form their dative plurals as follows: дочь → дочерýм, вре́мя → временáм, и́мя → именáм.

► For use of dative case with prepositions, see Units 85 and 89, for use of dative with expressions of possibility, impossibility and necessity see Unit 77, for use of dative with impersonal verbs, see Unit 81, for irregular nominative plurals, see Unit 6.

- 1** Build sentences from the three Russian words given in each line. The third word is in the nominative singular – you will need to put it into the dative plural.



e.g. Бабушка/конфеты/ребёнок → Бабушка даёт конфеты детям

1 Кассирша/сдачу/клиент

The cashier gives change to the customers.

2 Ученикй/книги/учитель

The pupils give the books to the teachers.

3 Медсестр/лекарство/пациент

The nurse gives medicine to the patients.

4 Гид/билеты/англичанин

The guide gives the tickets to the Englishmen.

5 Он/подарки/друзья

He gives presents to (his) friends.

- 2** Give the dative plural of the following nouns.

1 трамвай

tram

6 почтальон

postman

2 дерево

tree

7 преподаватель

teacher (in higher education)

3 картина

picture

8 здание

building

4 художник

artist

9 лошадь (ж.)

horse

5 сын

son

10 официантка

waitress

- 3** Match the phrases on the left with those on the right so that they accord with the English translations which follow.

1 Министры советуют

a актёрам

2 Продюсер звонит

b менеджерам

3 Врач помогает

c писателям

4 Программист помогает

d пациентам

5 Секретарь советует

e политикам

1 *The producer rings the actors.*

2 *The secretary advises the managers.*

3 *The ministers advise the politicians.*

4 *The computer programmer helps the writers.*

5 *The doctor helps the patients.*

15 UNIT Instrumental irregular

The instrumental case is used to describe the means by which an action is performed (*I write with a pen*). It is also used for the complement of a verb (*I work as a doctor*), in some time phrases, for nouns following some reflexive verbs and with certain prepositions.

A The principal meaning of this case is ‘by/with’ to explain how an action is achieved. The words underlined below would be put into the instrumental case:

Ivan went to Moscow by train. He took photos with his camera.

NB If a phrase including ‘with’ means ‘accompanied by’ (e.g. ‘tea with lemon’, ‘I’m going with my sister’), then the preposition **c** must be used before the noun in the instrumental: e.g. ‘Я еду в Лондон поездом с сестрой *I’m going to London with my sister*’.

B The instrumental case is used when a verb is followed by a ‘complement’ (which gives more information about the subject of a sentence). For example: *Ivan works as a photographer*.

C The instrumental ending is found in time phrases relating to seasons and parts of the day, e.g.:

лётом	<i>in summer</i>	утром	<i>in/during the morning</i>
зимой	<i>in winter</i>	вечером	<i>in/during the evening</i>

D Common reflexive verbs followed by the instrumental are **заниматься** (*to be busy, occupy oneself*) and **интересоваться** (*to be interested in*): он интересуется рисованием, *he is interested in drawing*.

E To form the instrumental case:

- Masculine nouns ending in a consonant add **-ом**, otherwise remove the last letter and add **-ем**: **вечер** (*evening*) → **вечером**, **трамвай** → **трамваем**, **учитель** → **учителем**. Remember that you can’t have unstressed **о** after **ж**, **ч**, **ш**, **щ**, **ц**! So instrumental of **муж** (*husband*) → **мужем**.
- Feminine nouns: remove last letter and add **-ой** to words which end in **-а** and **-ей** to words ending in **-я** or **-ия**. If a word ends in **-ь**, don’t remove it, just add **-ю**. Eg: **зима** (*winter*) → **зимой**, **Англия** → **Англией**, **осень** (*autumn*) → **осенью**. (**NB** **мать** → **матерью**, **дочь** → **дочерью**). Remember that you can’t have unstressed **о** after **ж**, **ч**, **ш**, **щ**, **ц**! So instrumental of **улица** → **улицей**.
- Neuter words: just add **-м!** **утро** (*morning*) → **утром**, **здание** → **зданием** (**NB** **время** → **вре́менем**).

15 UNIT Instrumental singular – *Exercises*

1 Underline the nouns in the following passage which you would need to put into the instrumental case in Russian.

In the evening I am going by train with Elena to Viktor's. Viktor works in Novgorod as an architect. Viktor's interested in sport. In the summer, he plays tennis with Sasha twice a week.

2 Here is the same passage in Russian. Complete it by putting the words in brackets into the instrumental singular.

Вечером я еду _____ (поезд) с _____ (Елена) к Виктору. Виктор работает в Новгороде, _____ (архитектор). Виктор интересуется _____ (спорт). Он играет в теннис с _____ (Саша) два раза в неделю.

8 Each customer in the restaurant wants something slightly different. Make up their requests by giving the instrumental of the following words.

e.g. рис → Мне, пожалуйста, рыбку с рисом. *For me, please, fish with rice.*

1 хлеб	<i>bread</i>
2 салат	<i>salad</i>
3 картошка	<i>potato</i>

e.g. cáxap → Мне, пожалуйста, чай с сахаром. *For me, please, tea with sugar.*

4	молокó	<i>milk</i>
5	лимón	<i>lemon</i>
6	печéнье	<i>biscuit</i>

Q Whose going to the cinema with whom? Complete the details by putting the names in brackets into the instrumental case:

e.g. Борис → Мы идём в театр с Борисом.

- 1 Йгорь (м)
- 2 профессор
- 3 Мария
- 4 друг
- 5 Катя

16 UNIT Instrumental plural

The instrumental plural endings are needed if a plural instrument is being described, or a plural noun is following the prepositions, or a verb which requires the instrumental.

A The instrumental plural endings for nouns are the same for all genders. There are two possible endings (-ами or -ыми) and to determine which one should be used, look at the last letter of the nominative singular.

B The ending for instrumental plural nouns ending in a consonant, -а or -о in the nominative singular is -ами. Add this ending to nouns ending in a consonant. To nouns ending in -а or -о, remove the last letter of the nominative singular, then add -ами, for example:

гриб (<i>mushroom</i>)	→ суп с грибáми	soup with mushrooms (i.e. <i>mushroom soup</i>)
— марка (<i>stamp</i>)	→ интересовáться маркáми	to be interested in stamps
письмо (<i>letter</i>)	→ занимáться пíсьмами	to be busy with letters

B The ending for instrumental plural nouns which end in anything else in the nominative singular (i.e. -й, -ь, -я, -ия, -е, -ие) is -ями. Remove the last letter of the nominative singular and add -ами, for example:

гость (*guest*) → Он éдет в téатр с гостя́ми. *He is going to the theatre with guests*

Г Nouns which have irregular nominative plurals form their instrumental plural from the nominative plural (but the choice is still only between the endings -ами, or -ыми), for example:

Nominative singular	Nominative plural	Instrumental plural
вре́мя	времена́	временáми
горо́д	города́	городáми
друг	друзъя́	друзъ́ями
стул	стулья́	стуль́ями
у́хо	ушí	ушáми

NB The following are exceptions and do not end in -ами, or -ыми:

дочь	дóчери	дочерьмí
ребёнок	дéти	детьмí
человéк	людéй	людьмí

► For uses of instrumental case, see Unit 15, for further uses with prepositions, see Units 84, 88, 89, for irregular nominative plurals, see Unit 6.

16th
ExercisesInstrumental plural –
Exercises**1 Put the following words into the instrumental plural.**e.g. магазайн (*shop*) → магазинами

1 аптéка	<i>chemist's</i>	6 дéрево	<i>tree</i>
2 здáние	<i>building</i>	7 друг	<i>friend</i>
3 предмéт	<i>subject</i>	8 экскúрсия	<i>excursion</i>
4 писáтель	<i>writer</i>	9 дочь	<i>daughter</i>
5 открытие	<i>discovery</i>	10 компьютер	<i>computer</i>

2 Who is interested in what? Make sentences by putting the singular noun into the instrumental plural:e.g. Сергéй/книга (*book*) → Сергéй интересéется книгами.

1 Ирина/симфóния	(<i>symphony</i>)
2 Валентíн/фильм	(<i>film</i>)
3 Архитéктор/окно	(<i>window</i>)
4 Гитарíст/гитáра	(<i>guitar</i>)
5 Студéнт/писáтель	(<i>writer</i>)

3 Complete the menu by putting the words in brackets into the instrumental plural.e.g. суп с _____ (*гриб*) → суп с грибáми *mushroom soup*

МЕНЮ

1	суп с _____ (помидóр)	<i>tomato soup</i>
2	салáт с _____ (огурéц)	<i>cucumber salad</i>
	рыба с жáреной картóшкой	<i>fish with fried potato</i>
	бифстрóганов	<i>beef stroganoff</i>
	курица с овощáми	<i>chicken with vegetables</i>
3	торт _____ (орéх)	<i>walnut cake</i>
4	мороженое с _____ (фрукт)	<i>ice-cream with fruits</i>

17 UNIT Prepositional singular

The prepositional case has no 'meaning' of its own. As its name suggests it is used in phrases which indicate position and specifically with the prepositions **в** (*in, at*) and **на** (*on, at*).

- A** There is one regular ending for masculine nouns: **-е**.

Nom. sing.	Prep. sing.	Example	Meaning
офи́с	офи́се	Я рабо́таю в офи́се.	I work in an office.
музе́й	музе́е	Он рабо́тает в музе́е.	He works in a museum.
стол	столé	Кни́га на столé.	The book is on the table.

- B** There are two regular endings for feminine nouns: **-е** and **-и**.

Nom. sing.	Prep. sing.	Example	Meaning
гостíница	гостинíце	Я рабо́таю в гостíнице.	I work in a hotel.
дерéвня	деревнé	Он живёт в дерéвне.	He lives in a village.
Англия	Англии	Я живу́ в Англии.	I live in England.
тетráдь	тетрáди	Упражнéние в тетрáди.	The exercise is in the exercise book.

NB *Mother* – мать → матери and *daughter* – дочь → дочери.

- B** There are two regular endings for neuter nouns: **-е** and **-и**.

Nom. sing.	Prep. sing.	Example	Meaning
письмó	письмé	Нóвости в письмé.	The news is in the letter.
пóле	пóле	Палáтка в пóле.	The tent is in the field.
здáние	здáнии	Офис в здáнии.	The office is in the building.

NB Irregular forms for *time* – врéмя (врémени) and *name* – ю́мя (јmени).

- C** Some masculine nouns have the irregular prepositional ending **-ý**. The most common of these are:

аэропорт (<i>airport</i>)	→ аэропортý	пол (<i>floor</i>)	→ полý
бéрег (<i>bank, shore</i>)	→ берегý	сад (<i>garden</i>)	→ садý
год (<i>year</i>)	→ годý	снег (<i>snow</i>)	→ снегý
лёд (<i>ice</i>)	→ льдý*	угол (<i>corner</i>)	→ углý*
лес (<i>forest</i>)	→ лесý	шкаф (<i>cupboard</i>)	→ шкафý

*(Fleeting vowels.)

► For fleeting vowels, see Unit 5. For other prepositions used with prepositional case, see Unit 89, for restrictions on use of **в**, see Unit 83.

17

Prepositional singular – Exercises**1 Make up sentences explaining who works where.**

e.g. учитель/шкóла → Учитель рабóтает в шкóле.

- | | |
|-----------------------|--|
| 1 врач/в/больни́ца | <i>the doctor works in the hospital</i> |
| 2 архитéктор/в/здáние | <i>the architect works in the building</i> |
| 3 моря́к/на/мóре | <i>the sailor works at sea</i> |
| 4 официáнт/в/ресторáн | <i>the waiter works in the restaurant</i> |
| 5 садóвник/в/сад | <i>the gardener works in the garden</i> |

2 Explain what is where by putting the nouns in brackets into the prepositional singular.

e.g. сúмка/на/пол → Сумка на полу. *The bag is on the floor*

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| 1 самолёт/в/аэропорт | <i>The plane is at the airport</i> |
| 2 вýза/в/пáспорт | <i>The visa is in the passport</i> |
| 3 шуба/в/шкаф | <i>The fur coat is in the cupboard</i> |
| 4 компььютер/на/стол | <i>The computer is on the table</i> |
| 5 Мадри́д/в/Испáния | <i>Madrid is in Spain</i> |

3 Put the following words into the prepositional case.

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------|
| 1 ме́сто | <i>place</i> |
| 2 бассéйн | <i>swimming pool</i> |
| 3 автомóбиль (м) | <i>car</i> |
| 4 лаборатóрия | <i>laboratory</i> |
| 5 лёд | <i>ice</i> |
| 6 музе́й | <i>museum</i> |
| 7 трамвáй | <i>tram</i> |
| 8 по́чта | <i>post office</i> |
| 9 кúхня | <i>kitchen</i> |
| 10 по́ле | <i>field</i> |

4 Match each question with an appropriate answer.

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 Рóзы в шкафу? | a Нет, онá в саду |
| 2 Собáка в университéте? | b Нет, он в театре |
| 3 Официáнт в лаборатóрии? | c Нет, онý в букéте |
| 4 Актёр в óфисе? | d Нет, он на стадио́не |
| 5 Спортсмén на кúхне? | e Нет, он в ресторáне |

18 UNIT Prepositional plural

The prepositional plural endings are needed if a plural noun is following the prepositions в (in, at) or на (on, at).

A The prepositional plural endings for nouns are the same for all genders. There are two possible endings (-ax or -ях) and to determine which one should be used, look at the last letter of the nominative singular.

B The ending for prepositional plural nouns ending in a consonant, -а or -о in the nominative singular is: -ax. Add this ending to nouns ending in a consonant. To nouns ending in -а or -о, remove the last letter of the nominative singular, then add -ax, for example:

ресторáн → Онý обéдают в ресторáнах. *They have lunch in restaurants.*

квартíра → Онý живýт в квартíрах. *They live in flats.*

мéсто → Онý сидýт на местáх у окнá. *They are sitting in seats by the window.*

B The ending for prepositional plural nouns which end in anything else in the nominative singular (i.e. -й, -ь, -я, -иа, -е, -ие) is -ях. Remove the last letter of the nominative singular and add -ях, for example:

автомобíль → Водíтели ждут в Drivers are waiting in (their) автомобíлях. cars.

стáниция → Пассажíры ждут на Passengers wait at stations. стáнциях.

C Nouns which have irregular nominative plurals form their prepositional plural from the nominative plural (but the choice is still only between the endings -ax, or -ях), eg:

Nominative singular	Nominative	Prepositional plural
гóрод	городá	городáх
друг	друзъя	друзъях
ребёнок	дéти	дéтях
стул	стúлья	стúльях
человéк	лóди	лóдях

The words мать, дочь, врёмя and юмя form their dative plurals as follows:
мать → материах, дочь → дочерях, врёмя → временях, юмя → именях.

► For other prepositions used with prepositional case, see Unit 89, for restrictions on use of в, see Unit 83, for irregular nominative plurals, see Unit 6.

18^н Prepositional plural – Exercises

1 Put the following nouns into the prepositional plural:

1 деревня	village	6 парфюмерия	perfume shop
2 город	town	7 портфель (м)	briefcase
3 центр	centre	8 поле	field
4 страна	country	9 номер	hotel room
5 место	place	10 стул	chair

2 Make sentences from the words that follow.

e.g. Туристы отдыхают/пляж → Туристы отдыхают на пляжах.
Tourists rest on beaches.



- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 Продавцы работают/магазин | Shop assistants work in shops. |
| 2 Студенты учатся/университет | Students study at universities. |
| 3 Фермеры работают/ферма | Farmers work on farms. |
| 4 Химики работают/лаборатория | Chemists work in laboratories. |
| 5 Учителя работают/школа | Teachers work in schools. |

3 Complete the passage about tourists below by putting the words in brackets into the prepositional plural. Use the English translation which follows to help you.

Туристы живут в _____ (гостиница) и в _____ (кемпинг). Они проводят некоторое время в _____ (музей), в _____ (галерея), в _____ (собор) и к концу дня, в _____ (универмаг). Они тоже проводят некоторое время в _____ (клуб), в _____ (сауна) и в _____ (ресторан).

Tourists live in hotels and on campsites. They spend a certain amount of time in museums, galleries, cathedrals and, towards the end of the day, in department stores. They also spend a certain amount of time in clubs, saunas and restaurants.

19 UNIT Nouns: six-case summary

The function of each of the six cases is summarised in this unit. The first trick is to know when which case is needed. The second is to know the endings well enough so that you can use the ranges of cases you might need in any one sentence.

The six cases are as follows.

- A** **Nominative** shows us who or what is performing the action of a verb. Remember that nouns are listed in dictionaries in their nominative singular form.

Мария даёт бутылку вина Серёю.
Maria gives the bottle of wine to Sergei.

- B** **Accusative** shows us the person or thing that has an action done to it (the direct object). Also used after certain prepositions.

Мария даёт бутылку вина Серёю.
Maria gives the bottle of wine to Sergei.

- B** **Genitive** is the Russian way of saying 'of', so it indicates possession and is also used when talking about quantities (also used after certain prepositions and sometimes with the comparative):

Мария даёт бутылку вина Серёю.
Maria gives the bottle of wine to Sergei.

- C** **Dative** shows us the indirect object of a sentence or phrase (the person or thing that is shown, told etc. something). Its basic meaning is 'to', 'for' (also used after certain prepositions and verbs).

Мария даёт бутылку вина Серёю.
Maria gives the bottle of wine to Sergei.

- A** **Instrumental** is used to describe the means by which an action is performed (eg 'by train', 'with a pen'), to describe accompanying circumstances (eg 'tea with lemon' with the preposition *c*), for the complement of a verb and after certain reflexive verbs.

Сергей любит ездить поездом. *Sergei likes to travel by train.*

Мне салат с томатами, пожалуйста. *Tomato salad for me, please.*

- E** **Prepositional:** this case has no 'meaning' of its own; it is used in phrases which indicate position and specifically with the prepositions *v* (in, at) and *na* (on, at).

Мария купила бутылку вина в супермаркете. *Maria bought the bottle of wine at the supermarket.*

► For nominative case endings, Units 4, 5, 6, accusative Units 7, 8, 9, genitive Units 10, 11, 12, dative Units 13, 14, instrumental Units 15, 16, prepositional Units 17, 18.

19

Nouns: six-case summary
— Exercises

1 Match the phrases on the left with those on the right, then find the matching English translation.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------|
| 1 В о́фисе мнóго | а врачéй |
| 2 В больнице мнóго | б актёров |
| 3 В школе мнóго | с профéссоров |
| 4 В университете мнóго | д компьютеров |
| 5 В театре мнóго | е учíтелей |

- 1 *There are lots of actors in the theatre.*
- 2 *There are lots of professors at the university.*
- 3 *There are lots of computers in the office.*
- 4 *There are lots of teachers in the school.*
- 5 *There are lots of doctors in the hospital.*

2 Look at the list of words a-e in Exercise 1 again.

- 1 Which case are they all in?
- 2 Now put each of them back into the nominative singular.

3 Underline the words in the following sentences which are in the **accusative case (animate and inanimate)**.

- ex. Я люблю спорт и мúзыку. I like sport and music.*
- 1 Бориc знаёт брата Ивáна. *Boris knows Ivan's brother.*
 - 2 Вы хотíте смотрéть телевíзор? *Do you want to watch television?*
 - 3 Онá купíла стулья. *She bought the chairs.*
 - 4 Вíктор уви́дел друзéй в театре. *Viktor saw (his) friends at the theatre.*
 - 5 Мы зака́зали курицу с рíсом. *We ordered chicken with rice.*

4 Complete the following sentences by putting the word in brackets into the appropriate case (if the word in brackets is plural, you will need to put it into a plural case form).

- 1 Сергéй любит _____ (дéрево).
- 2 Мы живём в _____ (гóрод).
- 3 Ольга далá _____ (Вадíм) _____ (картина).
- 4 Я знаю _____ (студéнты).
- 5 Я люблю ездить _____ (поезд) с _____ (друзья).
- 6 Он смотрит фильм с _____ (брат).
- 7 А́нна работает _____ (медсестра) в _____ (больни́ца).

20 UNIT The most common kind of adjective: unstressed

An adjective describes a noun (e.g. shows the colour, the size, the mood). In Russian an adjective must agree with its noun, i.e. a masculine adjective with a masculine noun. Adjectives with unstressed endings are the most common type in Russian.

- A** Adjectives are made up of a ‘stem’ and an ‘ending’ (the ‘ending’ is the last two letters). The adjectives dealt with in this unit all have stressed stems (and, therefore, unstressed endings). There are different endings for masculine, feminine and neuter singular, but the nominative plural ending is the same for all genders. Dictionaries always give the masculine singular nominative form of the adjective and it is this form which tells us what sort of adjective it is (unstressed, stressed or soft).
- B** The ending for masculine unstressed adjectives is -ый: новый телевизор, *new television*. Some masculine unstressed adjectives end in -ий, rather than -ый because the last letter of their ‘stem’ is г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ (first spelling rule). Two of the most common are the adjectives meaning *small* and *good*: маленький мальчик, *small boy*; хороший журнал, *good magazine*.
- NB** Although some nouns with masculine meanings have feminine endings (e.g. мужчина (*man*), дедушка (*grandfather*)) adjectives used to describe them must be masculine: старый дедушка, *old grandfather*.
- B** The ending for feminine unstressed adjectives is -ая (easy to remember, because feminine nouns usually end in -а or -я): новая гостиница, *new hotel*, старая кухня, *old kitchen*.
- F** The ending for neuter unstressed adjectives is -ое (easy to remember, because neuter nouns usually end in -о or -е): новое окно, *new window*. Some neuter unstressed adjectives end in -ее, not -ое, because of the second spelling rule, which does not allow an unstressed о to appear after ж, ч, ш, щ, ц: свежее яйцо, *fresh egg*, хорошее место, *good place*.
- D** The ending for all nominative plural adjectives of all genders is -ые. However, if the last letter of an adjective’s ‘stem’ is г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ, then the ending must be -ие (in accordance with the first spelling rule): новые телевизоры, *new televisions*, старые кухни, *old kitchens*, хорошие места, *good places*.

► For spelling rules, see Unit 2, for stressed and soft adjectives, see Unit 21, for possessive adjectives, see Unit 22, for adjectival cases other than the nominative, see Units 24–30.

20 The most common kind of adjective – Exercises

1 Choose the appropriate adjectives from the box to describe each person – give the adjectives appropriate endings.

высокий
tall

маленький
small

стройный
slim

толстый
fat

жéнщина, *woman*



мужчíна, *man*



- 1 _____ жéнщина *woman*
2 _____ мужчíна *man*

2 Match the phrases on the left with those on the right, using the English translation as a guide.

- | | | |
|--------------|----------|-----------------------------|
| 1 хоро́шая | a лéкции | <i>a good opera</i> |
| 2 интересные | b фильм | <i>interesting lectures</i> |
| 3 москóвское | c óпера | <i>the Moscow metro</i> |
| 4 маленький | d метрó | <i>a small theatre</i> |
| 5 скúчный | e теáтр | <i>a boring film</i> |

3 The adjectives in brackets are in the masculine singular form. Make them 'agree' with their noun (e.g. make sure you put a feminine adjective ending on the adjective if it is describing a feminine noun).

- e.g. _____ (вкусный) тóрты *delicious cakes* → вкусные тóрты
- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 _____ (красивый) шкóла | <i>a beautiful school</i> |
| 2 _____ (жёлтый) окнó | <i>a yellow window</i> |
| 3 _____ (свежий) молокó | <i>fresh milk</i> |
| 4 _____ (хороший) журнали́ст | <i>a good journalist</i> |
| 5 _____ (добрый) утро | <i>good morning</i> |

21 **N**it Stressed adjectives and soft adjectives

The most common kind of adjectives are those whose stems are unstressed (see Unit 20). In this unit we meet stressed adjectives – adjectives whose endings are stressed. Soft adjectives are a third, relatively small, group of adjectives; their endings are composed only of 'soft' vowels (ий, яя, ее, ие).

- A stressed adjective can be identified by looking at the masculine singular nominative form – it will end in -ой: молодо́й футбо́лист, *a young football player*.
- B The feminine form of a stressed adjective is exactly the same as that of an unstressed adjective – it will end in -ая: молодáя актры́са, *a young actress*.
- C The neuter form of a stressed adjective is exactly the same as that of an unstressed adjective – it will end in -ое: молодо́е дéрево, *a young tree*.
NB The Russian word for *big* is большо́й. Because the ending is stressed the letter щ can be followed by the letter ó – this applies both to the masculine singular and to the neuter singular: Большо́й теа́тр, *Bolshoi Theatre*, большо́е окно, *a big window*.
- D Plural stressed adjectives in the nominative end in -ые, whatever the gender of the noun they are describing: молоды́е люды, *young people*. If the adjective's stem ends in г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ, then the ending must be -иे (in accordance with the first spelling rule): други́е люды, *other people*.
- E There are only about 40 soft adjectives. You can recognise them because their masculine singular will end in -ний: послéдний автóbus, *the last bus*. The feminine ending for a soft adjective is -яя; the neuter ending is -ее and the plural is -ие: вечéрняя газéта, *evening paper*, зýмнее úтро, *a winter morning*, послéдние нóвости, *the latest news*.
Most soft adjectives are connected with time and seasons, as in the last examples. Others indicate location (e.g. Дáльний Востóк *the Far East*) and two indicate colour:

сíний дивáн	кáрие глазá
<i>a navy blue sofa</i>	<i>hazel eyes</i>

NB кáрий is the only soft adjective whose stem does not end in н.

► For explanation of role of adjective in a sentence and of stems and endings, see Unit 20, for spelling rules, see Unit 2, for possessive adjectives, see Unit 22; for adjectival cases other than the nominative, see Units 24–30.

21

Stressed adjectives and soft
adjectives – Exercises

1 Underline the soft adjectives in the following sentences (not all the adjectives in the sentences are soft!)

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 Я читáю интересную | I'm reading an interesting morning |
| утрénнюю газéту. | paper. |
| 2 Нíжняя пóлка óчень | The bottom bunk is very |
| удóбная. | comfortable. |
| 3 Вот сíняя лéтняя юбка. | Here's a dark blue summer skirt. |
| 4 Сосéдний дом óчень | The neighbouring house is very |
| стáрый. | old. |
| 5 Вот зáвтрашняя прогráмма. | Here's tomorrow's programme. |

2 In the following exercise there is a mixture of stressed and soft adjectives. Make them agree with their nouns.

- | | | |
|----------------------|-----------|---------------------|
| 1 (плохóй) _____ | погóда | bad weather |
| 2 (послéдний) _____ | останóвка | the last (bus) stop |
| 3 (новогóдний) _____ | подáрки | New Year presents |
| 4 (молодóй) _____ | дéрево | a young tree |
| 5 (кáрий) _____ | глазá | hazel eyes |
| 6 (большóй) _____ | здáние | a big building |

3 Match the phrases on the left with those on the right, using the English translation as a guide.

- | | | |
|-------------|------------|------------------|
| 1 послéдняя | a úтро | the last station |
| 2 весéннее | b жéнцина | a spring morning |
| 3 плохíе | c пробléмы | bad news |
| 4 большиé | d нóвости | big problems |
| 5 зáмужняя | e стáнция | a married woman |

4 Translate the following phrases into Russian (all the vocabulary is in this unit).

- 1 a young actress
- 2 other theatres
- 3 a summer programme
- 4 a bad morning
- 5 the last problem

22nd Possessive adjectives

The possessive adjectives (*my, your etc.*) indicate possession or a relationship; for example **твой дом, your house, мой тётя, my aunt, Это твоё письмо? Is this your letter?**

- A Possessive adjectives indicating *my, your, our* etc. must agree in number, gender and case with the noun they qualify, rather than with the possessor:
«Это моя сестра,» говорит Борис.

'This is my sister,' says Boris.

These are the forms for the nominative singular and plural.

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
my(mine)	мой	моя	моё	мои
your(s), belonging to ты	твой	твоя	твоё	твои
our(s)	наш	наша	нашё	наши
your(s), belonging to вы	ваш	ваша	вашё	ваши

Это ваше место?

Is this your seat?

- B Possessive adjectives indicating *his/hers, theirs* are invariable (i.e. never change):

Это её место?

Is this her seat?

Это их место?

Is this their seat?

belonging to он→ еро	belonging to она→ еë	belonging to оно→ еро	belonging to они→ их
-------------------------	-------------------------	--------------------------	-------------------------

- C Possessive adjectives are used less frequently in Russian than in English. Виктор увидел друзей в театре, *Viktor saw (his) friends at the theatre.* In particular, Russian tends not to use possessive adjectives when referring to parts of the body:

У меня болит голова.

My head aches.

► For reflexive possessive, see Unit 23, for possessive pronouns, see Unit 50. ► For use of reflexive pronoun *себя*, see Unit 54.



Possessive adjectives – Exercises

1 Change the English adjectives or pronouns given into their corresponding Russian forms.

e.g. (My) собáка в садú → Мо́я собáка в саду́. *My dog is in the garden.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 Вот (<i>our</i>) билéты. | 5 (<i>Their</i>) сад очень большо́й. |
| 2 Где (<i>your (formal)</i>) вíзы? | 6 (<i>My</i>) ба́бушка живёт в Ки́еве. |
| 3 (<i>His</i>) сестrá приéдет завтра. | 7 (<i>Your (informal)</i>) сын – студéнт? |
| 4 Кудá идёт (<i>your (informal)</i>) брат? | 8 Э́то (<i>her</i>) журнáл йли (<i>theirs</i>)? |
| | 9 (<i>Our</i>) друг в Москвé |

2 Match the phrases on the right and the left, using the English translations as a guide.

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| 1 Онá не знаёт, | a где их гостíница. |
| 2 Мы не знаем, | b где вáши кни́ги. |
| 3 Вы не знаете, | c где её клю́ч. |
| 4 Онí не знают, | d где на́ша собáка. |
| 5 Ты не знаешь, | e где твоё письмо́. |

- 1 *She doesn't know where her key is.*
- 2 *We don't know where our dog is.*
- 3 *You don't know where your books are.*
- 4 *They don't know where their hotel is.*
- 5 *You don't know where your letter is.*

3 Fill in the gaps by giving the appropriate form of the possessive adjective in order to complete the conversation.

- 1 Здрáвствуйте. Э́то _____ (*your*) ба́гаж?
- 2 А где (*my*) _____ клю́ч?
- 3 Вот _____ (*your*) клю́ч. У вас есть пáспорт и вíза?
- 4 Да, вот _____ (*my*) вíза и _____ (*my*) пáспорт.

4 Complete these sentences using the appropriate possessive adjective.

1 Он не знаёт, где _____ сестrá. Он не знаёт, где егó сестrá.
He doesn't know where his sister is.

- 1 Я не знаю, где _____ собáка.
- 2 Мы не знаем, где _____ друзья́.
- 3 Вы не знаете, где _____ карандáш?
- 4 Ты не знаешь, где _____ билéты?
- 5 Они не знают, где _____ паспортá.

23^{unit} Reflexive possessives

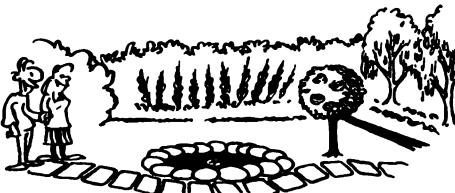
Reflexive possessives indicate possession by the subject of the nearest verb and it can mean my own, your own, his/her own, our own, their own. The reflexive possessive in Russian is свой (masculine form; feminine свой, neuter своё).

- A As far as я, ты, мы, вы are concerned, свой is an *alternative* to мой, твой, наш, ваш (and is in fact more common in conversational Russian, especially as an alternative to твой). So, if you want to say *I am reading my magazine*, you can say either Я читáю мой журнáл or Я читáю свой журнáл
- B Свой is **not** an alternative to егó, её, их. If you want to say *his, her, their*, you must work out whether you mean *his own, her own, their own* or not (i.e. you must work out whether you mean that the subject of the verb is the owner). For example:

Анна и Андрей лóбят свой сад means that the garden in question belongs to Anna and Andrei: *They love their (own) garden.*

Анна и Андрей лóбят их сад means that Anna and Andrei love a garden – but it belongs to another couple.

They love their (friends', daughter's etc.) garden.



- C Свой must indicate *possession* by the subject of the verb; it cannot just describe the subject of the verb. To describe the subject of the verb, you must use мой, твой, егó, её, наш, ваш, их:

Егó дéти говорáт по-рúсски. *His children speak Russian.*

- D Sometimes you need both an ordinary possessive and a reflexive possessive in one sentence:

Егó дóчь не óчень лóбит сво́й óфис.

His daughter doesn't really like her office.

In this sentence свой is needed in the second part of the sentence to indicate that the daughter doesn't like her own office (*possession* by the subject of лóбит). In the first part of the sentence the word 'his' is describing the subject of the verb and therefore the reflexive possessive cannot be used.

1 Underline the words in the following passage where it would be appropriate to use the reflexive possessive (hint: there are five).

Last year we set off on holiday in our car. Unfortunately Ivan lost his passport before we reached our destination. My brother, Nikolai, tried to help him find it. Nikolai is a very impatient person and soon lost his patience with Ivan. Whilst they were arguing, I looked in his suitcase and found that his passport was right at the bottom. How I love my brothers!

2 Complete the following phrases by choosing the appropriate word from the box. You will need to use one of the words in the box twice.

- | | | | |
|---|-------------|------------|---|
| 1 | сестрá | рабóтает в | <i>Her sister works in Novgorod.</i> |
| | Нóвгороде. | | |
| 2 | Константи́н | читáет | <i>Konstantin is reading his (own) letters.</i> |
| | пíсьма. | | |
| 3 | брáт | лóбит | <i>My brother likes his own bicycle.</i> |
| | велосипéд. | | |
| 4 | друзъ́ | купíли | <i>Our friends have bought their own house.</i> |
| | дом. | | |
| 5 | бáбушка | потеря́ла | <i>Their granny has lost her (own) letter.</i> |
| | письмó. | | |

её их мой наши своё свой

3 Translate the following phrases into Russian (possessive or reflexive possessive?)

- 1 Their house is in the town.
- 2 They like their house.
- 3 We like your house (formal).
- 4 Their mother likes our house.
- 5 Ivan's house? I like his house!

24^{NIT} Accusative singular (animate and inanimate)

An adjective must always agree with the noun it is describing. So, if the noun is in the accusative case, the adjective also must be in the accusative case.

- A** If an adjective is describing a masculine or a neuter inanimate noun this is not a problem: the ending is just the same as it is in the nominative singular:

Я читáю интересный журнал

I am reading an interesting newspaper

- B** If an adjective is describing a masculine animate noun (eg врач, *doctor*), the ending of the adjective must change; there are two possible endings, -его for soft and possessive adjectives and for unstressed adjectives whose stem ends in ж, ч, ш, щ or ц; otherwise, use -ого:

хороший новый врач → Я знаю хорошего нового врача
I know a good new doctor

твой дрёвний → Я знаю твоего дрёвнего врача
I know your ancient doctor

In the unlikely event of a neuter noun being animate, the adjective which describes it takes the same endings as a masculine adjective, for example вáжное лицó, *VIP* (*very important person*).

Вы знаете этого вáжного лица?

Do you know this very important person?

- B** Adjectives describing feminine nouns always change in the accusative, whether the noun they are describing is animate (e.g. актриса, *actress*) or inanimate (e.g. квартира, *flat*). The four possible endings are -ую, -юю, -у or -ю.

Type of adjective	Nominative singular	Animate accusative singular	Example
unstressed	новая	новую	Я люблю новую квартиру.
stressed	молодая	молодую	Я люблю молодую актрису.
soft	древняя	древнюю	Я люблю древнюю квартиру.
possessive	твой	твою	Я люблю твою квартиру.
	наш	нашу	Он любит нашу квартиру.

► For nominative singular adjectives, see Units 20, 21, 22, 23, for accusative singular nouns, see Unit 7.

1 Underline all the adjectives which are in the accusative case in the passage. A translation is given to help you.

Вчера мы были в городе. В ресторане мы видели нашего друга, Ивана. Он уже сделал свой покупки. Он показал нам свой новый свитер, дорогие джинсы и стильный пиджак.

Yesterday we were in town. In the restaurant we saw our friend, Ivan. He had already done his shopping. He showed us his new sweater, expensive jeans and stylish jacket.

2 Explain what Anya has bought by putting the phrases in the following list into the accusative case:

e.g. Аня купила _____ (красивая блузка) Аня купила красивую блузу. *Anya bought a beautiful blouse.*

1 большая собачка	<i>big dog</i>
2 новый диван	<i>new sofa</i>
3 пушистый кролик	<i>fluffy rabbit</i>
4 деревянный стол	<i>wooden table</i>
5 новое окно	<i>new window</i>
6 вкусный торт	<i>delicious cake</i>
7 стильная юбка	<i>stylish skirt</i>
8 интересная книга	<i>interesting book</i>
9 купальный костюм	<i>swimming costume</i>
10 синяя брошь	<i>dark blue brooch</i>

3 Explain who Viktor met at Konstantin's yesterday evening. Put each phrase into the accusative case.

Вчера вечером Виктор был у Константина. Там он встретил...

1 мой сестра	<i>my sister</i>
2 молодой профессор	<i>young professor</i>
3 древний писатель	<i>ancient writer</i>
4 интересная актриса	<i>interesting actress</i>
5 скучный журналист	<i>boring journalist</i>

25th Accusative plural (animate and inanimate)

An adjective must always agree with the noun it is describing. So, if the noun is in the accusative plural, the adjective also must be in the accusative plural. This is easy if the noun is inanimate – for all genders the ending is the same as it would be in the nominative. For animate nouns (people, animals) a special animate accusative ending is needed for all genders.

- A If the plural object which the adjective is describing is inanimate, the adjective endings are the same as they would be in the nominative plural – i.e. -ые or -ие. This applies to all genders.

Type of adjective	Nominative singular	Inanimate accusative singular	Example
unstressed	нóвый new хорóший, <i>good</i>	нóвые хорóшие (no unstressed о after ж, ч, ш, щ, ц)	Я читáю нóвые книгы. Я знáю хорóшие ресторáны.
stressed	плохóй, <i>bad</i>	плохóе	Он передáл плохóе новости. <i>He passed on the bad news.</i>
soft	дрéвний, <i>ancient</i>	дрéвние	Я люблó дрéвние городá.
possessive	твой, <i>your</i> наш, <i>our</i>	твой наши	Я вýжу твой дом. Он читáет наши пýсьма.

- B If the plural object is animate, then the two possible endings for the adjective are -ых or -их. This applies to all genders.

Type of adjective	Nominative singular	Animate accusative plural	Example
unstressed	нóвый, new хорóший, <i>good</i>	нóвых хорóших (no unstressed о after ж, ч, ш, щ, ц)	Я знáю нóвых студéнтов. Я знáю хорóших врачéй.
stressed	плохóй, <i>bad</i>	плохóх	Он критикýет плохóх актéров.
soft	дрéвний, <i>ancient</i>	дрéвних	Я люблó дрéвних писáтелей.
possessive	твой, <i>your</i> наш, <i>our</i>	твойх наших	Я знáю твойх сестёр. Он знáет наших друзéй.

- 1** What/whom does Viktor like to photograph? Complete the following sentences by choosing the correct ending for each adjective.

-ые	-ие	-ых	-их
-----	-----	-----	-----

Вíктор лóбит фотографíровать...

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1 сво__ детéй | his children |
| 2 красíв_ пляжи | beautiful beaches |
| 3 молод_ лошадéй | young horses |
| 4 исторíческ_ местá | historical places |
| 5 нов_ друзéй | new friends |

- 2** Meet the artist – what/whom does Katya like to paint? Put the phrases into the accusative plural (animate or inanimate?)

Кáтя лóбит рисовáть _____ (высóкий человéк) →
 Кáтя лóбит рисовáть высóких людéй. *Katya likes to paint tall people.*

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------|
| 1 большáя собáка | big dog |
| 2 красíвая лóшадь | beautiful horse |
| 3 зелёное дéрево | green tree |
| 4 дréвний дом | ancient house |
| 5 стрáнная пти́ца | strange bird |
| 6 свой брат | her brother |
| 7 молодáя кóшка | young cat |
| 8 мáленькая кварти́ра | small flat |
| 9 иностráнный гóрод | foreign town |
| 10 изvéстный писáтель | famous writer |

- 3** Make sentences explaining what you want to buy by putting the phrases into the accusative plural.

Я хочú купítъ _____ (нóвая рубáшка) →
 Я хочú купítъ нóвые рубáшки.
I want to buy new shirts.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1 мáленький собáка | small dog |
| 2 хороший костýом | good suit |
| 3 вáша кни́га | your book |
| 4 нóвое окно | new window |
| 5 интересная кассéта | interesting cassette |

26 UNIT Genitive singular

An adjective must always agree with the noun it is describing; if the noun is in the genitive singular, so must the adjective describing it. There are special genitive singular adjective endings for each gender.

A The endings for masculine and neuter adjectives are the same: either -ого or -его (if you know the accusative adjective endings, you'll recognise that these are the same as the masculine singular animate accusative). In the following examples the preposition от (*from/of*), which must always be followed by the genitive case) is used.

- All unstressed adjectives take the ending -ого unless their stem ends in ж, ч, ш, щ, ц (spelling rule number 2), in which case the ending is -его: паспорт английского (хорóшего) актёра, *the English (good) actor's passport*; недалеко от маленького поля, *not far from the small field*.
- All stressed adjectives take the ending -ого: дирéктор Большого Теáтра, *the director of the Bolshoi theatre*.
- All soft adjectives take the ending -его: ценá сýнего дивáна, *the price of the dark blue sofa*.
- All possessive adjectives take the ending -его: недалеко от наšего здания, *not far from our building*.

B If an adjective is describing a feminine noun which is in the genitive singular, then the adjective should end either in -ой or -ей.

- All unstressed adjectives take the ending -ой unless their stem ends in ж, ч, ш, щ, ц (spelling rule number 2), in which case the ending is -ей: паспорт английской (хорóшей) актрíсы, *the English (good) actress' passport*.
- All stressed adjectives take the ending -ой: дирéктор большо́й компáнии, *the director of the big company*.
- All soft adjectives take the ending -ей: ценá сýней рубáшки, *the price of the dark blue shirt*.
- All possessive adjectives take the ending -ей: дом моéй сестры, *the house of my sister*.

► For spelling rules, see Unit 2, for different categories of adjective, see Units 20–23, for genitive singular of nouns, see Unit 10, for prepositions taking the genitive case, see Units 83, 84, 85, 88, 89.

26

Genitive singular –
Exercises

- 1** Underline all the genitive singular adjectives in the following passage. A translation is given to help you.

Нáша шkóla нахóдится недалекó от красíвого пárка. Налéво от нáшей шkóly есть большáя аптéка, где рабóтает мать моегó друга, Ивáна. Друг моéй сестры тóже рабóтает в этой большóй аптéке.

Our school is situated not far from a beautiful park. To the left of our school there is a big chemist's, where the mother of my friend Ivan works. The friend of my sister also works in this big chemist's.

- 2** The words **мнóго (a lot, much)** and **мáло (little, few)** are both followed by the genitive case. Explain what you have a lot of and what you're short of by putting the following phrases into the genitive singular.

e.g. свéжий/сыр → У менéй мáло свéжего сыра. *I have little fresh cheese.*

1 мáло/рúссская вóдка	Russian vodka
2 мнóго/францúзское винó	French wine
3 мáло/китáйский рис	Chinese rice
4 мнóго/вкýсный салáт	delicious salad
5 мáло/свéжая колбасá	fresh sausage

- 3** Look at the pictures and make sentences to explain who owns what:

мáленькая стáрая
бáбушка



высóкая стрóйная
жéнщина



мáленький
тóлстый мужчýна



- 1 Э́то крóлик мáленькой стáрой бáбушки.
2 Э́то собáка _____
3 Э́то кóшка _____

27th Unit Genitive plural

An adjective must always agree with the noun it is describing; if the noun is in the genitive plural, so must the adjective describing it. There are only two genitive plural adjective endings (irrespective of gender).

- A** The two possible endings for genitive plural adjectives are -ых and -их (which are actually the same endings used for the animate accusative plural of adjectives). These endings apply to all three genders.
- B** Stressed and unstressed adjectives always take the ending -ых, unless their stem ends in г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ (spelling rule 1).

Examples of the ending -ых

паспортá молодых тури́стов
the passports of the young tourists

кни́ги совреме́нных писа́телей
the books of the modern writers

фотогра́фии инострáнных курóтов
photographs of foreign resorts

- B** The genitive plural adjective ending is -их if:

- the adjective's stem ends in г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ (spelling rule 1)
- the adjective is soft (e.g. си́ний *dark blue*)
- the adjective is possessive (e.g. мój)

Examples of the ending -их

The adjective's stem ends in г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ:
паспортá англíйских тури́стов

passports of English tourists

The adjective is soft:

кни́ги дре́вних писа́телей
books of the ancient writers

The adjective is possessive:

фотогра́фии на́ших друзéй
photographs of our friends

► For spelling rules, see Unit 2, for different categories of adjective see, Units 20–23, for genitive plural of nouns, see Units 11 and 12, for prepositions taking the genitive case, see Units 83, 84, 85, 88, 89.

27

Genitive plural –
Exercises

1 Using the expressions налево от (*to the left of*) and направо от (*to the right of*) **make up sentences by giving the genitive plural of each phrase.**

e.g. Налево от/молодой спортсмен → Налево от молодых спортсменов. *To the left of the young sportsmen.*

- | | |
|--|------------------------|
| 1 <i>to the left of/</i> утренняя газета | <i>morning paper</i> |
| 2 <i>to the right of/</i> наш велосипед | <i>our bicycle</i> |
| 3 <i>to the right of/</i> дорогая юбка | <i>expensive skirt</i> |
| 4 <i>to the left of/</i> деревянный стул | <i>wooden chair</i> |
| 5 <i>to the left of/</i> огромное здание | <i>huge building</i> |

2 Explain which groups are visiting the museum today by using the genitive plural in the following phrases.

e.g. группа/молодой мальчик → группа молодых мальчиков

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 итальянский/турист | <i>Italian tourist</i> |
| 2 известный/врач | <i>famous doctor</i> |
| 3 новый/студент | <i>new student</i> |
| 4 пожилой/человек | <i>elderly person</i> |
| 5 серьёзный/историк | <i>serious historian</i> |

3 Match the two halves of each sentence, using the English translation as a guideline:

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 У врача много | a интересных студентов |
| 2 У профессора много | b старых книг |
| 3 У таксиста много | c больных пациентов |
| 4 У банкира много | d новых автомобилей |
| 5 У библиотекаря много | e серьёзных проблем |
| 6 У фермера много | f тяжёлых писем |
| 7 У президента много | g красивых коробок |
| 8 У почтальона много | h американских долларов |

- 1 *The doctor has many sick patients.*
- 2 *The professor has many interesting students.*
- 3 *The taxi driver has many new cars.*
- 4 *The banker has many American dollars.*
- 5 *The librarian has many old books.*
- 6 *The farmer has many beautiful cows.*
- 7 *The president has many serious problems.*
- 8 *The postman has many heavy letters.*

28^{UNIT} Dative singular

An adjective must always agree with the noun it is describing; if the noun is in the dative singular, so must the adjective describing it. There are special dative singular adjective endings for each gender.

A If an adjective is describing a masculine noun which is in the dative singular, then the adjective should end either in -омы or -ему.

- All unstressed adjectives take the ending -омы unless their stem ends in ж, ч, ш, щ, ц (spelling rule number 2), in which case the ending is -ему: Гид дал паспорт английскому (хорошему) актёру, *the guide gave the passport to the English (good) actor.*
- All stressed adjectives take the ending -омы: Он позвонил молодому директору, *he rang the young director.*
- All soft adjectives take the ending -ему: Он позвонил прежнему директору, *he rang the former director.*
- All possessive adjectives take the ending -ему: Он позвонил моему брату, *he rang my brother.*

B If an adjective is describing a feminine noun which is in the dative singular, then the adjective should end either in -ой or -ей.

- All unstressed adjectives take the ending -ой unless their stem ends in ж, ч, ш, щ, ц (spelling rule number 2), in which case the ending is -ей: Гид дал паспорт английской (хорошей) актрисе, *the guide gave the passport to the English (good) actress.*
- All stressed adjectives take the ending -ой: Он позвонил молодой англичанке, *He rang the young Englishwoman.*
- All soft adjectives take the ending -ей: Он позвонил прежней учительнице, *He rang the former teacher.*
- All possessive adjectives take the ending -ей: Он позвонил моей сестре, *He rang my sister.*

C If an adjective is describing a neuter noun which is in the dative singular, then the adjective should end either in -ому or -ему (just like masculine adjectives). In the examples below the preposition к *towards/to the house* of (which must always be followed by the dative case) is used.

- All unstressed adjectives take the ending -омы unless their stem ends in ж, ч, ш, щ, ц (spelling rule number 2), in which case the ending is -ему: к новому (хорошему) зданию, *towards the new (nice) building.*
- All stressed adjectives take the ending -ому: к большому окну, *towards the big window.*
- All soft adjectives take the ending -ему: к соседнему зданию, *towards the neighbouring building*
- All possessive adjectives take the ending -ему: к моему месту, *towards my seat (place).*

► For spelling rules, see Unit 2, for different categories of adjective, see Units 20–23, for dative singular of nouns, see Unit 13, for prepositions with the dative case, see Units 85 and 89.

1 Make sentences explaining who Ivan helps every day.

e.g. старый почтальон → Каждый день Иван помогает старому почтальону. *Every day Ivan helps the old postman.*

1 русский студент	<i>Russian student</i>
2 больная старушка	<i>sick old lady</i>
3 прежний менеджер	<i>former manager</i>
4 наша мать	<i>our mother</i>
5 молодой пианист	<i>young pianist</i>

2 Who is walking towards what? Make up sentences from the information given.

e.g. Елена/шикарный магазин → Елена идёт к шикарному магазину. *Elena is walking towards a stylish shop.*

1 Татьяна/красивая картина	<i>beautiful picture</i>
2 Игорь/древняя ваза	<i>ancient vase</i>
3 Вадим/большой мост	<i>big bridge</i>
4 Аня/соседний дом	<i>neighbouring house</i>
5 Павел/новая лаборатория	<i>new laboratory</i>

3 Look at the pictures and make sentences to explain who is giving what to whom.

1 Бабушка даёт морковку пушистому кролику.

2 Женщина даёт конфету _____.

3 Мужчина даёт рыбу _____.

29 UNIT Dative plural

An adjective must always agree with the noun it is describing; if the noun is in the dative plural, so must the adjective describing it. There are only two dative plural adjective endings (irrespective of gender).

- A The two possible endings for dative plural adjectives are -ым and -им. These endings are used for all three genders.
- B Stressed and unstressed adjectives always take the ending -ым (unless their stem ends in г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ (spelling rule 1)).

Examples of the ending -ым

гид даёт биле́ты молоды́м тури́стам
the guide gives the tickets to the young tourists

гид ча́сто помо́гаёт инострáнным актры́сам
the guide often helps foreign actresses

фотóграф подхóдит к зелёны́м полýм
the photographer is walking towards the green fields

- B The dative plural adjective ending is -им if:

- the adjective's stem ends in г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ (spelling rule 1)
- the adjective is soft (e.g. синий, *dark blue*)
- the adjective is possessive (e.g. мой)

Examples of the ending -им

The adjective's stem ends in г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ:
гид даёт биле́ты англýским тури́стам
the guide gives the tickets to the English tourists

The adjective is soft:

мы подхóдим к сосéдним домáм
we are approaching the neighbouring houses

The adjective is possessive:

мы помо́гаём на́шим дру́зьям
we are helping our friends

► For spelling rules, see Unit 2, for different categories of adjective, see Units 20–23, for dative plural of nouns, see Unit 14, for prepositions with the dative case, see Units 85, 86, 89.

1 Explain who sends a letter to whom by matching the two halves of each sentence, using the English translation as a guideline.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 врач пишет письмо | a иностранным политикам |
| 2 профессор пишет письмо | b больным пациентам |
| 3 дирижёр пишет письмо | c потенциальным клиентам |
| 4 журналист пишет письмо | d ленивым студентам |
| 5 банкир пишет письмо | e известным музыкантам |

- 1 *The doctor writes a letter to the sick patients.*
- 2 *The professor writes a letter to the lazy students.*
- 3 *The conductor writes a letter to the famous musicians.*
- 4 *The journalist writes a letter to the foreign politicians.*
- 5 *The banker writes a letter to potential customers.*

2 Make sentences explaining who you intend to buy presents for.

- мо́й друг → Я хочу́ купи́ть пода́рки мо́им друзь́ям.
- | | |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1 тво́й dochь | <i>your daughter</i> |
| 2 наш учите́ль | <i>our teacher</i> |
| 3 молодáя собáка | <i>young dog</i> |
| 4 прéжний дирéктор | <i>former director</i> |
| 5 рýсский студéнт | <i>Russian student</i> |

3 Complete the sentences by putting the adjective in brackets into the dative plural.

- 1 Официáнт подхóдит к _____ (большóй стол).
- 2 Архитéктор подхóдит к _____ (мáленькое окнó).
- 3 Татья́на подхóдит к _____ (но́вый óфис).
- 4 Кáти подхóдит к _____ (свой ребёнок).
- 5 Ивáн подхóдит к _____ (стáрые друзья́).

30 UNIT Instrumental singular

An adjective must always agree with the noun it is describing; if you put the noun in the instrumental singular, you must put the adjective describing it in the instrumental singular too. There are special instrumental singular adjective endings for each gender.

A The endings for masculine and neuter adjectives are the same: either -ым or -им:

- All unstressed and stressed adjectives take the ending -ым unless their stem ends in г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ (spelling rule number 1), in which case the ending is -им: посеща́ть музéй с молодýм инострáнным (английским) тури́стом, *to visit the museum with a young foreign (English) tourist.*
- All stressed adjectives take the ending -ым: с молодýм тури́стом, *with a young tourist.*
- All soft adjectives take the ending -им: с прéжним дирéктором, *the factory with the former director.*
- All possessive adjectives take the ending -им: с моíм письмóм, *with my letter.*

B If an adjective is describing a feminine noun which is in the instrumental singular, then the adjective should end either in -ой or -ей (just like the instrumental singular noun ending).

- All unstressed adjectives take the ending -ой unless their stem ends in ж, ч, ш, щ, ц (spelling rule number 2), in which case the ending is -ей: фильм с хоро́шой англýйской актрíсой, *the film with the good English actress.*
- All stressed adjectives take the ending -ой: он рабóтает с молодóй англичáнкой, *he works with a young Englishwoman.*
- All soft adjectives take the ending -ей: он рабóтает с прéжней учительницей, *he works with a former teacher.*
- All possessive adjectives take the ending -ей: он рабóтает с моéй сестрóй, *he works with my sister.*

► For spelling rules, see Unit 2, for different categories of adjective, see Units 20–23, for instrumental singular of nouns, see Unit 15, for prepositions with the instrumental case, see Units 84, 88, 89.

30 Exercises

1 How are things done? Complete the sentence by putting the adjective in brackets into the instrumental singular (remember: because you are describing the 'instrument by which an action is performed' you don't need the preposition *c*).

- 1 Я еду _____ (ранний) поездом. *I travel by the early train.*
- 2 Я пишу _____ (дешёвая) ручкой. *I write with a cheap pen.*
- 3 Надо мыть посуду _____ (горячая) водой. *It is necessary to do the washing up with hot water.*
- 4 Я открываю дверь _____ (мой) ключом. *I open the door with my key.*
- 5 Он гладит рубашку _____ (новый) утюгом. *He irons the shirt with the new iron*

2 Make sentences explaining who wants to go to the theatre with whom (remember: because you are describing 'in the company of' you do need the preposition *c*).

e.g. Зоя/новый друг → Зоя хочет пойти в театр с новым другом.
Zoya wants to go to the theatre with (her) new boyfriend.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 Врач/красивая медсестра | <i>Doctor/beautiful nurse</i> |
| 2 Иван/английский турист | <i>Ivan/English tourist</i> |
| 3 Журналист/известный политик | <i>Journalist/famous politician</i> |
| 4 Евгений/моя сестра | <i>Evgeny/my sister</i> |
| 5 Муж/молодая жена | <i>Husband/young wife</i> |

3 Explain what kind of sandwiches you want by putting each phrase into the instrumental singular.

e.g. французский сыр → Я хочу бутерброд с французским сыром.
I want a sandwich with French cheese.

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 свежая ветчина | <i>fresh ham</i> |
| 2 копчёная рыба | <i>smoked fish</i> |
| 3 зелёный огурец | <i>green cucumber</i> |
| 4 дорогой майонез | <i>expensive mayonnaise</i> |

4 Explain what you want to drink with your sandwich by putting the phrase in brackets into the instrumental singular.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 Кофе с _____ (холодное молоко) | <i>coffee with cold milk</i> |
| 2 Чай со _____ (свежий лимон) | <i>tea with fresh lemon</i> |

31 | Instrumental plural

An adjective must always agree with the noun it is describing; if the noun has to be in the instrumental plural, so must the adjective describing it. There are only two instrumental plural adjective endings (irrespective of gender).

- Ⓐ The two possible endings for instrumental plural adjectives are -ыми and -ими. These endings are used for all three genders.
- Ⓑ Stressed and unstressed adjectives always take the ending -ыми (unless their stem ends in г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ (spelling rule 1)).

Examples of the ending -ыми

гид в музее с молодыми туристами <i>the guide is at the museum with the young tourists</i>
гид посещает театр с иностранными актрисами <i>the guide visits the theatre with foreign actresses</i>
секретарь вошёл с важными письмами <i>the secretary came in with important letters</i>

- Ⓑ The instrumental plural adjective ending is -ими if:

- the adjective's stem ends in г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ (spelling rule 1)
- the adjective is soft (e.g. *сийний*, *dark blue*)
- the adjective is possessive (e.g. *мой*)

Examples of the ending -ими

The adjective's stem ends in г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ: гид в музее с английскими туристами <i>the guide is in the museum with the English tourists</i>

The adjective is soft:

он работает с прежними политиками <i>he works with former politicians</i>
--

The adjective is possessive:

мы отдыхаем с нашими друзьями <i>we are on holiday with our friends</i>
--

► For spelling rules, see Unit 2, for different categories of adjective, see Units 20–23, for instrumental plural of nouns, see Unit 16, for prepositions with the instrumental case, see Units 84 and 89.

31

Instrumental plural –
Exercises

1 What's on the menu? Match the two halves of each phrase, using the English translation as a guideline.

- | | |
|---------------|---------------------------|
| 1 салат | a русскими грибами |
| 2 суп со | b вкусными абрикосами |
| 3 курица с | c свежими овощами |
| 4 мороженое с | d итальянскими помидорами |

Italian tomato salad

Fresh vegetable soup

Chicken with Russian mushrooms

Ice cream with delicious apricots

2 Explain who Aleksandr was at the theatre with on the different days of the week. Put the words in brackets into the instrumental plural.

- 1 В понедельник Александер был в театре с _____ (новый друг).
- 2 Во вторник Александер был в театре с _____ (французский гость).
- 3 В среду Александер был в театре с _____ (важный клиент).
- 4 В четверг Александер был в театре с _____ (молодой ребёнок).
- 5 В пятницу Александер был в театре с _____ (русский студент).
- 6 В субботу Александер был в театре со _____ (старый пенсионер).
- 7 В воскресенье Александер был в театре с _____ (наш брат).

3 Who is busy with what? Give the Russian for the phrases in brackets in order to complete each sentence.

Балерина занимается _____ (new dances) → Балерина занимается новыми танцами.



...

- 1 Писатель занимается _____ (interesting books).
- 2 Врач занимается _____ (sick patients).
- 3 Профессор занимается _____ (new students).
- 4 Журналист занимается _____ (good newspapers).
- 5 Программист занимается _____ (Russian computers).

32^{NIT} Prepositional singular

An adjective must always agree with the noun it is describing; if you put the noun in the prepositional singular, you must put the adjective describing it in the prepositional singular too. There are special prepositional singular adjective endings for each gender.

A If an adjective is describing a masculine noun which is in the prepositional singular, then the adjective should end either in -ом or -ем:

- All unstressed adjectives take the ending -ом unless their stem ends in ж, ч, щ, ц (spelling rule number 2), in which case the ending is -ем: в нóвом (хорóшем) ресторáне, *in a new (good) restaurant*.
- All stressed adjectives take the ending -ом: в Большóм Теáтре, *in the Bolshoi Theatre*.
- All soft adjectives take the ending -ем: в сýнем пиджакé, *in a dark blue jacket*.
- All possessive adjectives take the ending -ем or -ём: в моём (твоём, своём, нашем, вáшем) дóме, *in my (your; one's own, our, your) house*.

B If an adjective is describing a feminine noun which is in the prepositional singular, then the adjective should end either in -ой or -ей.

- All unstressed adjectives take the ending -ой unless their stem ends in ж, ч, щ, ц (spelling rule number 2), in which case the ending is -ей: в новой (хорóшей) гостíнице, *in a new (good) hotel*.
- All stressed adjectives take the ending -ой: в большóй гостíнице, *in a big hotel*.
- All soft adjectives take the ending -ей: в сýней рубáшке, *in a dark blue shirt*.
- All possessive adjectives take the ending -ей: в моéй кварти́ре, *in my flat*.

B If an adjective is describing a neuter noun which is in the prepositional singular, then the adjective should end either in -ом or -ем (just like masculine adjectives). In the following examples the preposition от (*from/of*), which must always be followed by the genitive case, is used.

- All unstressed adjectives take the ending -ом unless their stem ends in ж, ч, щ, ц (spelling rule number 2), in which case the ending is -ем: в маленьком поле, *in the small field*.
- All stressed adjectives take the ending -ом: в Большóм здáнии, *in the big building*.
- All soft adjectives take the ending -ем: на сýнем дивáне, *on the dark blue sofa*.
- All possessive adjectives take the ending -ем: в нашем здáнии, *in our building*.

► For spelling rules, see Unit 2, for different categories of adjective, see Units 20–23, for prepositional singular of nouns, see Unit 17, for prepositions taking the prepositional case, see Units 83 and 89.

1 Complete the phrases by choosing the appropriate ending from the box below:

e.g. Врач рабо́тает в но́в____ больни́це → Врач рабо́тает в но́вой больни́це.

-ом -ем -ой -ей

- 1 Бáбушка живёт в стáр____ дóме. *Granny lives in an old house.*
- 2 Зóя живёт в дréвн____ квáртире. *Zoya lives in an ancient flat.*
- 3 Светлáна живёт в шúмн____ гóроде. *Svetlana lives in a noisy town.*
- 4 Андрéй живёт в красíв____ дéревне. *Andrei lives in a beautiful village.*
- 5 Сáша живёт в хорóш____ гóроде. *Sasha lives in a nice town.*

2 Who works where? Match the two halves of the sentences, using the English translation as a guide.

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 Мой брат рабо́тает | а в большóй больни́це |
| 2 Мой дядя рабо́тает | б в красíвом пárке |
| 3 Моя женá рабо́тает | с в мáленькой аптéке |
| 4 Моя тётя рабо́тает | д в сосéднем здáнии |
| 5 Мой муж рабо́тает | е в хорóшой шкóле |

My brother works at a good school.

My uncle works in a big hospital.

My wife works in the neighbouring building.

My aunt works in a small chemist's.

My husband works in a beautiful park.

3 Put the phrases that follow into the prepositional singular.

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1 зелёный парк | green park |
| 2 Красная Площадь | Red Square |
| 3 чёрный портфель | black briefcase |
| 4 жёлтая юбка | yellow skirt |
| 5 синее небо | blue sky |

33^{NIT} Prepositional plural

An adjective must always agree with the noun it is describing; if the noun has to be in the prepositional plural, so must the adjective describing it. There are only two prepositional plural adjective endings (irrespective of gender).

- A The two possible endings for prepositional plural adjectives are -ых and -их (i.e. just like the endings for genitive plural adjectives). These endings are used for all three genders.
- B Stressed and unstressed adjectives always take the ending -ых (unless their stem ends in г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ (Spelling Rule 1)).

Examples of the ending -ых

картины в больших интересных музеях

the pictures are in big interesting museums

в иностранных школах

in foreign schools

в важных письмах

in important letters

- B The prepositional plural adjective ending is -их if:

- the adjective's stem ends in г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ (spelling rule 1)
- the adjective is soft (e.g. синий, *dark blue*)
- the adjective is possessive (eg мой)

Examples of the ending -их

The adjective's stem ends in г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ:

в английских гостиницах

in English hotels

The adjective is soft:

в утренних газетах

in the morning papers

The adjective is possessive:

в наших номерах

in our hotel rooms

► For spelling rules, see Unit 2, for different categories of adjective see Units 20–23, for prepositional plural of nouns, see Unit 18, for prepositions with the prepositional case, see Units 83, 87, 89.

33

Prepositional plural – Exercises

1 Describe where and how you spent your holidays by matching up the two halves of each sentence. Use the English translations as a guide.

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 мы лежáли | a в сýних бассéйнах |
| 2 мы дéлали покúпки | b на жéлтых пляжах |
| 3 мы обéдали | c на прекрасных кóртах |
| 4 мы смотрéли картины | d в больших музéях |
| 5 мы плáвали | e в хороших ресторáнах |
| 6 мы игрáли в тéннис | f больших концéртных зáлах |
| 7 мы пíли коктéйли | g в шикáрных магазýнах |
| 8 мы слúшали концéрты | h в приятных бáрах |

We lay on yellow beaches.

We did shopping in stylish shops.

We had lunch in good restaurants.

We looked at pictures in big museums.

We swam in blue pools.

We played tennis on splendid courts.

We drank cocktails in pleasant bars.

We listened to concerts in big concert halls.

2 Put the following phrases into the prepositional plural.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 красивое здáние | <i>beautiful building</i> |
| 2 рýсский гóрод | <i>Russian town</i> |
| 3 ночной клуб | <i>night club</i> |
| 4 послéдний автóбус | <i>last bus</i> |
| 5 высóкое дéрево | <i>tall tree</i> |

3 Build sentences from the following vocabulary, using the prepositional plural.

■ Онý/отдыхáть/в/приятный/курóпт → Онý отдыхáют в приятных курóртах. *They holiday (rest) in pleasant resorts.*

1 Он/рабóтать/на/шýмный/ *He works in noisy factories.*
завóд

2 Онá/дéлать покúпки/в/
дорогóй/магазин *She does her shopping in expensive
shops.*

3 Мы/читáть новостí/в/
вéчерняя/газéта *We read the news in the evening
papers.*

4 Вы/обéдать/в/мáленький/
ресторáн *You have lunch in small restaurants.*

5 Онý/отдыхáть/в/красíвый/*They rest in beautiful parks.*
парк

34 Nit Long and short forms

Most Russian adjectives have two sorts of ending: the long form (discussed in Units 20–33) and the short form. The short form exists in the nominative case only (when you are talking about the subject of the sentence) and is usually found at the end of a phrase or sentence. It is much less common than the long form.

- A** The long form is used ‘attributively’ – i.e. in front of a noun: Извéстный актёр живёт в Москвé. *The famous actor lives in Moscow.* The short form is used ‘predicatively’ – i.e. after the noun: Кли́мат сурóв, *The climate is harsh.*

In modern conversational Russian, the long form is very often used everywhere and the short form hardly ever. However, sometimes the short form **must** be used in order to convey the correct message.

- B** Short forms are formed by shortening the long form of the adjective.

Long form	Masculine short form	Feminine short form	Neuter short form	Plural (all genders)
красíвый	красíв	красíва	красíво	красíвы

For some adjectives, this will mean that a ‘cluster of consonants’ (i.e. more than one) is left together at the end of the masculine short form, and the vowel e (or sometimes o or ё) has to be inserted, for example: извéстный, *famous, well known* – Этот факт извéстен, *This fact is well known.*

- B** Some Russian adjectives have no short form (e.g. colour, nationality, substance – wooden, metal – ordinal numerals, *first, second* etc. and soft adjectives). But NB, the adjective рад (*glad, happy*) exists *only* in the short form.

- C** If the adjective comes before the noun or needs to be in a case other than the nominative, you must use the long form. Otherwise, in most instances you may use either the long or the short form. So ‘the town is beautiful’ could be either: Гóрод красíвый or Гóрод красíв. However, there are some adjectives when you should always use the short form in the ‘predicative’ (i.e. after the noun) position, because to use the long form would imply something different (e.g. the adjective for ‘ill’ in the long form implies chronically sick, as opposed to the short form, which is used when you want to indicate ‘not too well at the moment’). For example:

больной, ill (short form: болен, больна, больно, больны);

занятый, occupied (short form: занят, занятá, занято, заняты);

свобóдный, free, vacant (short form: свободен, свободна, свободно, свободны).

34 Long and short form – Exercises

- 1 In the following English passage underline the adjectives which are in the 'short' (predicative) position (clue: there are five).

Svetlana walks into the house and notices that all the doors and windows are open. The new curtains are blowing about in the wind. The door, however, is shut. On the table a cat lies, howling. It is clearly glad to see her. She is furious when she realises that her son has gone out without feeding the cat. 'He is so unreliable!' she thinks.

- 2 The adjectives in brackets are in the masculine singular long form. Put them into the short form.

e.g. Моя кóшка _____ (голóдный) → Моя кóшка голодна. *My cat is hungry.*

- 1 Это мéсто _____ (свобóдный). *This seat is free.*
- 2 Его автомобиль _____ (новый). *His car is new.*
- 3 Нáши дéти _____. (здорóвый). *Our children are well.*
- 4 Все óкна _____. (откры́тый). *All the windows are open.*
- 5 Кáша _____. (вкусный). *The porridge is delicious.*

- 3 Match the two halves of each sentence, using the English translations as a guide.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------|
| 1 Как жаль! Ресторáн | a согла́сна |
| 2 Как хорошо! Кáтя | b рáды |
| 3 Как жаль! Врач | c откры́та |
| 4 Он приéхал? Мы | d закры́т |
| 5 Хóлодно, потому что дверь | e заня́т |

What a shame! The restaurant is closed.

How nice! Katya agrees (is in agreement).

What a shame! The doctor is busy.

He has arrived? We are glad.

It's cold because the door is open.

- 4 Look again at the adjectives a–e in Exercise 3.

- 1 Which is the only one you would never see in the long form?
- 2 Work out what the masculine singular long forms would be of the other adjectives in the list.

35 UNIT Long form comparative

If we say that something is 'more interesting' or 'less interesting', we are using the comparative.

- A** In English we can form the comparative by using the words *more* and *less*, or if the English adjective is very short, we can add *-er* to the end of the adjective (*it is cheaper*). Russian uses the words *более* (*more*) or *менее* (*less*) in front of the long form of the adjective. This is called the compound comparative.
- B** The words *более* and *менее* never change (i.e. in their endings) but the long adjective which follows them must agree with the adjective it is describing: *Это более (менее) интересный* *This is a more (less) interesting town.* *город.*
- Она живёт в более (менее) интересном городе. *She lives in a more (less) interesting town.*
- C** Some adjectives do not form compound comparatives. They have a long form comparative of their own. Here are the first four:

Long form adjective	Long form comparative
большой, <i>big</i>	больший (NB the stress is on the stem!), <i>bigger</i>
маленький, <i>small</i>	меньший, <i>lesser, smaller</i>
хороший, <i>good</i>	лучший, <i>better</i>
плохой, <i>bad</i>	худший, <i>worse</i>

The adjectives for *old* and *young* cannot form compound comparatives if you are talking about animate nouns or groups – they have their own long form comparative.

старый, <i>old</i>	старший, <i>older, senior</i>	Моя старшая сестра. <i>My older sister.</i>
молодой, <i>young</i>	младший, <i>younger</i>	Младший класс. <i>The junior class.</i>

You can, however, say *это более старое здание, it is an older building.*

The adjectives for *high* and *low* cannot form compound comparatives if you are using them in the sense which means *superior* and *inferior*:

высокий, <i>high</i>	высший, <i>superior, higher</i>	высшее образование <i>higher education</i>
низкий, <i>low</i>	нижний, <i>inferior, lower</i>	нижний бал <i>lower (bottom) mark</i>

You can, however, say *это более высокое здание, it is a taller building.*

► For short form comparatives see Unit 36; for constructions with the comparative, see Unit 37.

35 Long form comparative – Exercises

- 1 Underline the adjectives in this passage for which you would need the compound comparative. Circle the ones which have their own long form comparative in Russian.

My younger sister, Masha, really likes shopping. Yesterday she bought a bigger bag, a newer car, a more expensive radio, a more interesting book and a smaller mobile telephone.

- 2 Complete a translation of this passage giving the Russian for the adjective in brackets.

Моя _____ (*younger*) сестра, Маша, очень любит делать покупки. Вчера она купила _____ (*bigger*) сумку, _____ (*newer*) автомобиль, _____ (*more expensive*) радио, _____ (*more interesting*) книгу и (*smaller*) мобильный телефон.

- 3 Pair up the words on the left and the right using the English translations as a guide:

1	младший	a	письмо
2	старшая	b	идея
3	более приятный	c	ситуация
4	менее интересное	d	школа
5	нижний	e	группа
6	лучшая	f	картина
7	худшая	g	сын
8	менее красивая	h	бал
9	более шумная	i	дом
10	большая	j	дочь

- | | |
|----|-------------------------------------|
| 1 | <i>younger son</i> |
| 2 | <i>elder daughter</i> |
| 3 | <i>a more pleasant house</i> |
| 4 | <i>a less interesting letter</i> |
| 5 | <i>a lower (bottom) mark</i> |
| 6 | <i>better idea</i> |
| 7 | <i>worse situation</i> |
| 8 | <i>a less beautiful picture</i> |
| 9 | <i>a more noisy (noisier) group</i> |
| 10 | <i>a bigger school</i> |

36^{NIT} Short form comparative

If you are using a comparative adjective 'predicatively' – i.e. after the noun it is describing (the book is more interesting), then you can use the short form comparative. This sort of comparative can only be used to mean more . . . (interesting, beautiful etc.)

- A** The first really important thing to remember is that you can only use the short form comparative when the person or thing you are describing is in the nominative case.
- B** The short comparative is formed by adding the ending -ee to the stem of the adjective. This ending is the same for all genders and is invariable (it never changes):

дом приятнее	<i>the house is more pleasant</i>
собака красивее	<i>the dog is more beautiful</i>
письмо интереснее	<i>the letter is more interesting</i>
цветы прекраснее	<i>the flowers are more splendid</i>

Note that it is more common to use this form of the comparative when you are saying *A=B* (*the house=pleasant*) than it would be to say *дом более приятный*.

- B** Some very common adjectives make their comparative short form irregularly. Here are some common ones:

near	блíзкий	→ ближе
high	высóкий	→ выше
loud	грóмкий	→ грóмче
hot	жárкий	→ жáрче
far	далёкий	→ дáльше
cheap	дешёвый	→ дешéвле
expensive, dear	дорогóй	→ дорóже
short	короткий	→ корóчче
small	мáленький	→ мéньше
young	молодóй	→ молóже
low	нíзкий	→ нíже
bad	плохóй	→ хúже
simple	простóй	→ прóще
old	стáрый	→ стáрше
quiet	тихíй	→ тýше
fat	тóлстый	→ тóлще
good	хорошíй	→ лúчше
frequent	чáстый	→ чáще

- C** Some adjectives have no short form comparative: adjectives of colour, of substance (e.g. wooden, silk).

► For nominative case, see Units 4-6, for long form comparative, see Unit 35, for constructions with the comparative, see Unit 37.

36 Short form comparative – Exercises

1 In which of the following sentences would you be able to use the short form comparative in Russian?

- 1 My brother is cleverer.
- 2 This book is less boring.
- 3 His car is cheaper.
- 4 We have bought a newer car.
- 5 Do you know where the more comfortable chair is?
- 6 It is simpler.
- 7 It is further to Moscow.
- 8 We have received a more important letter.
- 9 This letter is shorter.
- 10 This radio is more expensive.

2 Now complete the Russian versions of these sentences by giving the appropriate comparative form of the adjectives in brackets:

- 1 Мой брат _____ (умный).
- 2 Эта книга _____ (скучный).
- 3 Его машина _____ (дешёвый).
- 4 Мы купили _____ (новый) дом.
- 5 Вы не знаете, где _____ (удобный) стул?
- 6 Это _____ (простой).
- 7 До Москвы _____ (далёкий).
- 8 Мы получили _____ (важный) письмо.
- 9 Это письмо _____ (короткий).
- 10 Это радио _____ (дорогой).

3 Look at the two pictures and then answer the questions.



- 1 Кто толще?
- 2 Кто моложе?

37^Nit Constructions with the comparative

In English we form the second part of the comparative by using the word than (he has a more beautiful car than you). In Russian this part of the sentence is formed either by using the word **чем** (than) or by using the genitive.

- A** When we are using the long form comparative in Russian, we must form the second part of the comparative by using the word **чем**:

У него более красивый автомобиль, чем у вас.

He has a more beautiful car than you.

The word **чем** must also be used if the words **его**, **её**, **их** feature in the second part of the comparison:

Это более красивый автомобиль, чем его.

It's a more beautiful car than his.

- B** If you are using the short form of the comparative, there are two ways in which you can deal with the second part of your comparison (*than . . .*). Either use **чем**:

Мой дом приятнее, чем твой.

My house is pleasanter than yours.

Or use the genitive of the second part of your comparison:

Мой дом приятнее твоего.

My house is pleasanter than yours.

- C** If you want to 'intensify' your comparative (*it is much more interesting*), simply add the words **горázdo** or **намнóго**:

Мой дом горázdo приятнее твоего.

My house is much pleasanter than yours.

Эта книга намнóго интереснее.

This book is much more interesting

- D** If you want to say how much taller/shorter, younger/older someone is, use the preposition **на**:

Она молóже егó на шесть лет.

She is six years younger than him.

► For genitive case, see Units 10–12, for long form of comparative, see Unit 35, for short form, see Unit 36.

37 Constructions with the comparative – Exercises

1 Match the phrases on the left with those on the right, using the English translations as a guide:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------|
| 1 Его собака непослужнее | a нашего |
| 2 Этот сотовый телефон больше | b моей |
| 3 Их сад красивее | c ваших |
| 4 Ваше письмо интереснее | d твоего |
| 5 Мой идеи лучше | e моего |

- 1 *His dog is naughtier than mine.*
- 2 *This mobile phone is bigger than yours.*
- 3 *Their garden is more beautiful than ours.*
- 4 *Your letter is more interesting than mine.*
- 5 *My ideas are better than yours.*

2 Big differences! Use the comparative with **намного** and the genitive of comparison to build sentences from the following words. Use the English translation as a guide.

Вадим/старый/Иван → Вадим намного старше Ивана. *Vadim is much older than Ivan.*

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1 Ольга/добрый/Ирина | <i>Olga is much kinder than Irina.</i> |
| 2 Андрей/серёзный/
Константин | <i>Andrei is much more serious than Konstantin.</i> |
| 3 Он/энергичный/я | <i>He is much more energetic than me.</i> |
| 4 Мой брат/ленивый/моя
сестра | <i>My brother is much lazier than my sister.</i> |
| 5 Бабушка/молодой/дедушка | <i>Grandmother is much younger than grandfather.</i> |

3 Translate the following sentences into Russian (decide whether to use **чем** or the genitive of comparison for the second part of each sentence).

- 1 This is a more serious problem than his.
- 2 Moscow is a bigger city than Novgorod.
- 3 He is older than me.
- 4 Your television is better than mine.
- 5 I like the more energetic dog.

38^{Nit} Superlative

If we say something is the most interesting, smallest, best we are using the superlative form of the adjective.

- A** The superlative is very easy to form. Simply put the adjective сáмый in front of the the adjective and noun you are describing. There is no short form of the superlative (so it can be used predicatively and attributively – before or after the noun):

сáмый серьёзный фильм *the most serious film*
этот фильм сáмый серьёзный *this film is the most serious*

- B** Make sure that the adjective сáмый agrees in number, gender and case with its adjective and noun:

Я изучáю сáмый красíвый язы́к. *I am studying the most beautiful language.*

Я читáю сáмую серьёзную кни́гу. *I am reading the most serious book.*

Мы живём в сáмом приятном райо́не. *We leave in the pleasantest region.*

- C** Сáмый can be used with the comparatives лúчши́й and хúдши́й to mean *best* and *worst*, or they can just be used as superlatives in their own right, so: это лучшáя идея and это сáмая лúчшáя идея both mean *it's the best idea*. The same applies to мла́дши́й (*younger/youngest*) and стáрши́й (*older/oldest*).

- D** To say '*the most... of*' (e.g. *one of the most interesting books*), use the preposition из:

однá из сáмых интересных книг
one of the most interesting books

- E** A very small number of adjectives form their superlative with the ending -айши́й or -е́йши́й. The most useful are in phrases such as:

У менé нет ни малéйшей идеи. *I haven't the slightest idea.*

Чистéйши́й вздор! *Utter rubbish!*

Ближáйшая стáнция метрó. *The nearest metro station.*

► For long and short forms of adjective, see Units 34, for long and short forms of comparative adjectives, see Units 35-37, for uses of *из*, see Unit 85.

**1 Turn the adjective in each sentence into the superlative.
(remember agreements).**

e.g. Ирина (ленивый) → Ирина сáмая ленивая. *Irina is the laziest.*

- 1 Э́то _____ (краси́вый) парк. *This is the most beautiful park.*
- 2 Ива́н _____ (хоро́ший) футбо́ли́ст. *Ivan is the best footballer.*
- 3 Вот _____ (энергíчный) медсестра. *Here is the most energetic nurse.*
- 4 Я читáю _____ (интересны́й) книгу. *I am reading the most interesting book.*
- 5 Он живёт в _____ (мáленький) кварти́ра. *He lives in the smallest flat.*

2 Complete the sentences with an appropriate superlative adjective, using the English translations as a guide.

- 1 Он оди́н из _____ гитарíстов. *He is one of the best guitarists.*
- 2 Э́то сáмый _____ пляж. *It is the most beautiful beach.*
- 3 _____ вздор! *Utter rubbish!*
- 4 Где _____ останóвка автóбуса? *Where is the nearest bus stop?*
- 5 Э́то _____ проблéма. *It is the most serious problem.*

3 Choose a suitable adjective from the box and then make the superlative form to complete each sentence:

жáркий	краси́вый	крепкий	холóдный
--------	-----------	---------	----------

- 1 Зýма _____ врéмя гóда. *Winter is the coldest time of year.*
- 2 _____ климат. *The hottest climate.*
- 3 Вóдка _____ напítок. *Vodka is the strongest drink.*
- 4 Э́то _____ кварти́ра. *It is the most beautiful flat.*

39 Nit Adverbs

Adverbs describe how things are done (she writes slowly). In English most end in -ly. In Russian most adverbs are identical with the neuter short form adjective.

- A** The most common form of adverb describes how the action of a verb is carried out:

Она медленно пишет. *She writes slowly.*

Он быстро бежит. *He runs quickly.*

Note that the adverb is usually placed before the verb. Sometimes it is not ‘obvious’ that there is a verb being described – i.e. the verb *to be* does not exist in the present tense; but phrases describing the weather, for example, rely on adverbs: Сего́дня теплó (it is warm today) – теплó is ‘describing’ how it is.

- B** The adverbs медленно and быстро are the short neuter forms of the adjectives медленный and быстрый. Most adverbs, therefore, end in o. Some adverbs will end in -e (because of the second spelling rule) and if an adjective is soft, its adverb will end in -e:

блестя́щий → блестя́ще *brilliantly*

и́скренний → и́скренне *sincerely*

Look out for stress changes between some adjectives and adverbs:

тёплýй (*warm*) → теплó (*it is warm*)

хоро́ший (*good*) → хоро́шо́ (*well*)

- C** Adjectives which end in -ский have adverbs ending in -ски: практически (*almost*). ‘Adverbial phrases’ which indicate nationality are formed from по and adjectives ending in -ский: мы говорим по-ру́сски we speak *Russian*.

- D** Although the vast majority of adverbs in Russian are formed from adjectives, adverbs which tell us about time and place are not. Here are the most common:

Time	Place
когда́, when	где́, where
тогда́, then, at that time	здесь, here
уже́, already	там, there
ещё, still, yet	куда́, where to*
долго, for a long time	сюда́, here (to here)*
давно́, a long time ago	туда́, there (to there)*
недавно́, recently	откуда́, from where
	отсюда́, from here
	оттуда́, from there

* Note that these indicate motion towards: Кудá вы идёте? (To) where are you going?

> For short forms of adjective, see Unit 34, for use of prepositions with the accusative to express motion towards, see Units 83 and 84, for second spelling rule, see Unit 2.

1 Form adverbs from the following adjectives.

1 глúпый	<i>stupid</i>
2 приятный	<i>pleasant</i>
3 хороший	<i>good</i>
4 тёплый	<i>warm</i>
5 логический	<i>logical</i>
6 гордый	<i>proud</i>
7 впечатляющий	<i>impressive</i>
8 саркастичный	<i>sarcastic</i>
9 эгоистичный	<i>selfish</i>
10 щедрый	<i>generous</i>
11 тихий	<i>quiet</i>
12 шумный	<i>noisy</i>

2 Answer using an adverb which means the opposite of the adverb in the first statement.

Ирина плохó поёт? Нет! Она хорошó поёт.

Does Irina sing badly? No! She sings well

- Сегóдня хóлодно? (*No, today it is warm*).
- Пианист плохó играёт? (*No, brilliantly*).
- Студéнт бýстро рабóтает? (*No, slowly*).
- Дéти шúмно играют? (*No, quietly*).
- Брат ленивó играёт? (*No, energetically*).

3 Work out which language is spoken by whom.

Итальянец → Итальянец говорит по-итальянски.

- Испáнец *Spaniard*
- Русский *Russian*
- Англичáин *Englishman*
- Японец *Japanese*

40 Adverbs: comparative and superlative

Adverbs, like adjectives, have comparative and superlative forms (e.g. he runs more quickly and he runs the most quickly).

- A** The comparative adverb is identical to the short form comparative adjective: so, for example:— быстрее, *more quickly*, медленнее, *more slowly*, лучше, *better*:

Он всегда работает быстрее, чем я.

He always works more quickly than I do.

Adverbs ending in -и form their comparative with более:

Он всегда работает более логически, чем я.

He always works more logically than I do.

- B** To say, for example, *less quickly*, *less logically*, use менее with the adverb:

Он всегда думает менее логически, чем я.

He always thinks less logically than I do.

- B** Дальше (*further*) and раньше (*earlier, previously*) come from adjectives, but are used only as comparative adverbs.

- C** Like comparative adjectives, comparative adverbs can form constructions with both чем and with the genitive of comparison:

Виктор работает усерднее, *Viktor works harder than Valentin.*
чем Валентин.

Виктор работает усерднее *Viktor works harder than Valentin.*
Валентина.

The words гораздо or намного (*much*) can also be used with comparative adverbs:

Он работает гораздо быстрее, чем я.

He works much more quickly than I do.

Ещё can be used with a comparative adverb to mean even: он работает ещё быстрее, *he works even more quickly.*

- D** The short form of the comparative adverb is very useful in expressions such as: чем больше, тем веселее, *the more the merrier*, как можно скорее, *as quickly/soon as possible*, всё чаще, *more (and more) often*.

- E** To make the superlative of an adverb, simply add *всего* or *всех*: if you want to say ‘best of all’ be careful to check whether you mean ‘better than anything else’ or ‘better than anyone else’:

Она играет на гитаре лучше *She plays the guitar best of all* (i.e. всего. better than she does anything else).

Она играет на гитаре лучше *She plays the guitar best of all* (i.e. всех. better than anyone else).

40th Adverbs: comparative and superlative – Exercises

1 Match the phrases on the left with their translations on the right:

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 чем скорéе, тем лúчше | a <i>as cheaply as possible</i> |
| 2 как мóжно прóще | b <i>the sooner the better</i> |
| 3 всё бли́же | c <i>worse and worse</i> |
| 4 как мóжно дешéвле | d <i>nearer and nearer</i> |
| 5 всё хýже | e <i>as simply as possible</i> |

2 How are the various sportsmen performing? Build sentences using comparative adverbs.

6.2 Андрéй бы́стро бéгаet/Игорь → Андрéй бы́стро бéгаet, но Игорь бéгаet еще быстрéе. *Andrei runs quickly, but Igor runs even more quickly.*

- 1 Пианист хорошо игрáет /гитарíст
- 2 Мой брат ленíво игрáет/твой брат
- 3 Теннисíст энергíчно игрáет /футболíст
- 4 Баскетболíст глóупо игрáет /хоккеíст
- 5 Игрóк в гольf мéдленно игрáет/ игрóк в крíкет

3 Translate into Russian:

- 1 *Katya speaks more quietly than her sister.*
- 2 *Igor works much harder than Valentin.*
- 3 *Tatyana sings even worse than Zoya.*
- 4 *The earlier the better.*
- 5 *As soon as possible.*

4 Complete the sentences below with either лúчше всегó or лúчше всех:

- 1 Мой брат говорíт по-итальянски _____ (*better than anyone else*).
- 2 Он игрáет в шáхматы _____ (*best of all; better than any other game*).
- 3 Я знáю врача _____ (*better than I know anyone else*).

41 NIT Cardinal numerals (1)

Numbers like two, twenty-three, forty-six, ninety etc. are called cardinal numerals – they express a definite quantity.

- A** Here are the cardinal numerals in Russian from 1 to 20:

1 один	11 оди́ннадцать
2 два	12 двенáдцать
3 три	13 тринáдцать
4 четы́ре	14 четырнáдцать
5 пять	15 пятнáдцать
6 шесть	16 шестнáдцать
7 семь	17 семнáдцать
8 вóсемь	18 восемнáдцать
9 дéвять	19 девятнáдцать
10 дéсять	20 двáдцать

- B** Numbers above 20 are formed quite simply in Russian – just place them one after another: 24 = двáдцать четы́ре, 55 = пятьдесáт пять, 103 = сто три.

Here are the numbers from 30 to 1000:

30 трíдцать	300 трíста
40 сóрок	400 четырёста
50 пятьдесáт	500 пятьсóт
60 шестьдесáт	600 шестьсóт
70 сéмьдесяят	700 семьсóт
80 вóсемьдесяят	800 восемьсóт
90 девяно́сто	900 девятьсóт
100 сто	1 000 ты́сяча
200 двéсти	

- C** The numeral one has three forms in Russian. It behaves like an adjective: один дом, *one house*, одна квартира, *one flat*, одно место, *one place (seat)*.

- D** The numeral two has two forms in Russian: два for when it is used with masculine and neuter nouns and две for when it is used with feminine nouns: два брáта и две сестры, *I have two brothers and two sisters*.

► For declension of numerals, see Unit 42, for use of adjectives with numerals and of cases with numerals, see Unit 43, for genitive singular and plural, see Units 10–12.

41

Cardinal numerals (1) – Exercises

1 Write out these sums as you would say them.

+ плюс – мінус = бу́дет

e.g. 46 + 6 = ? сорок шесть плюс шесть бу́дет пятьдесят два

1 $100 - 20 = ?$

2 $2 + 16 = ?$

3 $33 + 102 = ?$

4 $29 - 15 = ?$

5 $85 - 54 = ?$

2 Match up the numbers in words on the left with the figures on the right:

1 девяносто два

a 10

2 семьсот двадцать два

b 92

3 одиннадцать

c 722

4 десять

d 212

5 двести двенадцать

e 11

3 Here are some telephone numbers. Write them out and practise saying them:

e.g. 25–27–70 двадцать два – двадцать семь – сёмьдесят

1 42–93–12

2 84–53–55

3 20–30–40

4 36–62–73

5 18–11–26

4 Look at this Russian proverb. Which numeral is involved and what is the advice being given?

НЕ ИМЕЙ СТО РУБЛЕЙ, А ИМЕЙ СТО ДРУЗЕЙ

42^{Nit} Cardinal numerals (2)

Like nouns, numerals have six cases. In this unit we look just at the case endings of numerals; the use of numerals in their six cases is explained in Unit 43.

A One functions like an adjective (* = animate accusative):

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	оди́н	одна́	одно́
Acc.	оди́н/одногó*	однú	однó/одногó*
Gen.	одногó	однóй	одногó
Dat.	одномý	однóй	одномý
Instr.	однíм	однóй	однíм
Prep.	однóм	однóй	однóм

B Two, three and four are the trickiest numerals in terms of case endings.

	2	3	4
Nom.	два/две	три	четыре
Acc.	два/две/двух*	три/трёх*	четыре/ четырёх*
Gen.	двух	трёх	четырёх
Dat.	двум	трём	четырём
Instr.	двумá	тремá	четырьмá
Prep.	двух	трёх	четырёх

B Numerals which end in a soft sign (e.g. пять) are feminine nouns. Numerals with a soft sign in the middle change in the middle and at the end. Forty and 100 are much more straightforward (90 works like 100):

Nom.	пять	пятьдесát	сóрок	сто
Acc.	пять	пятьдесát	сóрок	сто
Gen.	пятí	пятíдесяti	сорокá	ста
Dat.	пятí	пятíдесяti	сорокá	ста
Instr.	пятíо	пятíдесяtю	сорокá	ста
Prep.	пятí	пятíдесяti	сорокá	ста

NB In the genitive, dative and prepositional вóсемь becomes восьмý

C The ‘hundreds’ base their declension on the first digit, for example:

Nom.	две́сти	пятьсót	Dat.	двумстáм	пятистáм
Acc.	две́сти	пятьсót	Instr.	двумястáми	пятистáми
Gen.	двухсót	пятьсót	Prep.	двухстáх	пятистáми

► For use of numerals in different cases, and for adjectives with numerals, see Unit 43.

1 Buried in the following passage are six numerals written out as words, but in all sorts of different cases. Can you recognise them? A translation of the passage is given in the Key.

Борыс недавно был в двух книжных магазинах и купил три книги. Вчера он читал свою новую книгу по химии. Он читал о шестистах разных экспериментах в тридцати двух страницах. Девяносто шесть химиков получили результаты, но в сорок четырех лабораториях произошли аварии.

2 Give the genitive of the following numerals.

- 1 4
- 2 60
- 3 23
- 4 92
- 5 110

3 Give the dative of the following numerals.

- 6 40
- 7 18
- 8 73
- 9 300
- 10 600

4 Give the instrumental of the following numerals.

- 1 3
- 2 10
- 3 200
- 4 20
- 5 5

5 Give the prepositional of the following numerals.

- 1 12
- 2 86
- 3 45
- 4 11
- 5 100

43^{NIT} Cardinal numerals (3)

In this Unit we look at how to deal with numerals and adjectives and how to use numerals in their different cases.

A The number 1 works like an adjective: Он работает в одном приятном месте, *He works in one pleasant place*. However big a compound number is, if the last digit is '1', then the noun remains in the singular: Сто одна серьёзная проблема, *101 serious problems*.

The numbers 2, 3 and 4 (and their compounds, e.g. 23, 34, 52) are followed by the genitive singular of nouns: У меня два офиса и двадцать три работника. *I have 2 offices and 23 employees*.

Numbers above 5 (other than compounds of 2, 3 and 4) are followed by the genitive plural of nouns: У меня пять офисов, *I have 5 offices* (but watch out for человéк (*person*), which behaves like this: три человéка, пять человéк).

B The rules for using 2, 3 and 4 + adjective + noun are different for different genders:

Masculine and neuter: when the numeral is the subject, use the genitive plural of the adjective and the genitive singular of the noun which follow it: два больших стола, *2 big tables*, два больших окна, *2 big windows*.

Feminine: use either the nominative plural or the genitive plural of the adjective and the genitive singular of the noun: три красивые (красивых) сестёр *3 beautiful sisters*.

B If numbers 5 and above are the subject (again, not compounds of 1, 2, 3 and 4, which follow their own rules) they are followed by the genitive plural of both the noun and the adjective. This applies to all genders:

пять дорогих билетов 5 expensive tickets

двадцать пять дорогих билетов 25 expensive tickets

NB двадцать два дорогих билета 22 expensive tickets.

C These rules apply if a numeral is in the position of subject or an inanimate object. If a numeral needs to be in a case (e.g. after a preposition), the whole numeral and its adjective and noun need to be in the same case, and the noun will be in the plural (unless it follows the numeral one):

Я вижу один большой стол *I see one big table and two pictures*.
и две картины.

Билеты для тридцати пяти *Tickets for five Russian tourists and one English guide*.
русских туристов и
одного английского гида.

The animate accusative with numerals is used only for 1, 2, 3, 4 on their own (not in compounds!). So, *I see 2 students, 22 professors and 5 guides* will be: Я вижу двух студентов (both in the animate accusative!), двадцать два профессора (for compounds of 2, 3, 4 no change for animate accusative!) и пять гидов (for numbers 5 + (apart from compounds of 2, 3, 4) just use the genitive plural).

43 Cardinal numerals (3) – Exercises

1 Write out the numerals in words and put the nouns in brackets into the appropriate case (genitive singular or genitive plural):

- 1 Два _____ (журнал)
- 2 Шесть _____ (неделя)
- 3 Сорок _____ (человек)
- 4 Двадцать три _____ (кошка)
- 5 Одиннадцать _____ (час)
- 6 Сто _____ (рубль)
- 7 Девятнадцать _____ (километр)
- 8 Тысяча _____ (книга)
- 9 Сто четыре _____ (мальчик)
- 10 Сто пять _____ (девушка)

2 Using sections А, Б, В opposite to help you, translate the following into Russian:

- 1 two big dogs
- 2 three small theatres
- 3 one hundred and ten new students
- 4 five old houses
- 5 thirty two energetic boys

3 The adjective is always followed by the dative. Explain who the policeman is walking towards by putting the following phrases into the dative.

► Милиционер/три/английский турист → Милиционер идет к трём английским туристам. *The policeman is walking towards three English tourists.*

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 пять/старый профессор | five old professors |
| 2 двадцать/сердитый клиент | twenty cross customers |
| 3 одиннадцать/шумный хулиган | eleven noisy hooligans |

4 Look at the following phrases, then look again at section Г opposite and explain which endings are being used and why.

- 1 Он говорил с пятью новыми студентами. *He spoke with five new students.*
- 2 Вы не видели тридцать два студента? *Did you not see the 32 students?*
- 3 Вы не видели трёх студентов? *Did you not see the three students?*
- 4 Он говорил о пяти новых студентах. *He spoke about the 5 new students.*
- 5 Мы купили две новые книги. *We bought two new books.*

44th Ordinal numerals

Ordinal numerals (first, second, third etc.) indicate position in an order or series. In Russian ordinal numerals are adjectives.

1st	пéрвый	11th	оди́ннадцатый	30th	тридцáтый
2nd	вторóй	12th	две́надцатый	40th	сороково́й
3rd	трéтий	13th	трина́дцатый	50th	пятидеся́тый
4th	четвéртый	14th	четы́рнадцатый	60th	шестидеся́тый
5th	пáтый	15th	пятна́дцатый	70th	семидеся́тый
6th	шестóй	16th	шестнáдцатый	80th	восьмидеся́тый
7th	сéмьмой	17th	семнáдцатый	90th	девяностый
8th	восéмьмой	18th	восемнáдцатый	100th	сто́ый
9th	девáтый	19th	девятнáдцатый	1000th	тысячный
10th	десáтый	20th	двадцáтый	1,000,000th	миллионны́й

- A** All the ordinal numerals are unstressed or stressed adjectives (i.e. they behave like *новый* and *большой*) except for *трéтий* (*third*) which is irregular (* = animate accusative).

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	трéтий	трéтья	трéтье	трéтьи
Acc.	трéтий/трéтьего*	трéтью	трéтье	трéтьи/трéтьих*
Gen.	трéтьего	трéтьей	трéтьего	трéтьих
Dat.	трéтьему	трéтьей	трéтьему	трéтьим
Instr.	трéтьим	трéтьей	трéтьим	трéтьими
Prep.	трéтьем	трéтьей	трéтьем	трéтьих

- B** When making an ordinal adjective from a compound numeral, only the last digit is in the form of an ordinal, so, for example:

Пятьдеся́т вторáя недéля góда, *the 52nd week of the year*

- B** If you need to put a compound numeral in a case other than the nominative, only the last digit changes its case endings:

Дни пятьдеся́т вторóй недéли, *the days of the 52nd week*

- G** In abbreviations the final letter of the ordinal adjective ending is used, for example:

52-я недéля

The 52nd week

Note that the last two letters of the ordinal adjective must be used if the penultimate letter is a consonant: *покúпки сто шестьдеся́т восымóго клиéнта* → *покúпки 168-го клиéнта*.

- D** Russian uses Roman numerals for centuries and monarchs:

XXI век *21st century*

Пётр I *Peter the First (the Great)*

► *For use of ordinal numerals in time phrases, see Unit 45 and dates, see Unit 46.*

45

Ordinal numerals – Exercises

1 Answer the questions about the months of the year.

e.g. Февраль – второ́й ме́сяц го́да. *February is the second month of the year.*

- 1 Апрéль
- 2 Но́ябрь
- 3 Август
- 4 Май
- 5 Июль

2 Who has bought which size shoes? Build sentences with the information given.

e.g. Ивáн/46 → Ивáн купíл тýфли сóрок шестóго размéра.

- 1 Вадíм/38
- 2 Татьяна/30
- 3 А́нна/ 32
- 4 Андрéй/43
- 5 Елéна/36

3 Explain which floor each department is on.

e.g. Одéжда – этáж 1 → Одéжда на пéрвом этажé. *Clothes are on the first floor.*

- 1 Багáж – этáж 2
- 2 Фотоаппараты – этáж 3
- 3 Тýфли – этáж 4
- 4 Книги – этáж 5
- 5 Сувениры – этáж 6

4 Explain which photograph is on which page (write out the numbers in words).

e.g. Фотогráфия гóрода/стр. 14 → Фотогráфия гóрода на странíце четéрнадцатой. *The photograph of the town is on page 14 (on page the 14th).*

- 1 Фотогráфия шкóлы/стр. 52
- 2 Фотогráфия теáтра/стр. 229
- 3 Фотогráфия улицы/стр. 87
- 4 Фотогráфия актёра/стр. 61
- 5 Фотогráфия актрíсы/стр. 10

45 UNIT Telling the time

**Both cardinal and ordinal numerals are needed
when telling the time.**

- A** To answer the question *What time is it?* (Котóрый час? or Скóлько врéмени?) by stating an hour: give the cardinal number followed by the word for hour (genitive singular after 2, 3, 4; genitive plural for 5 and above):

три часа	3 o'clock
шесть часов	6 o'clock

- B** To give the time on the 'right-hand side' of the clock (i.e. between the hour and the half-hour), you need to use the ordinal numbers. You also need to think ahead, because the way of saying 4.10, for example, is to say *ten minutes of the fifth hour*:

дéсять минúт пáтого	4.10
двáдцать пять минúт пáтого	4.25

To express the half hour, use either *полови́на* or its abbreviation *пол-*:

полови́на пáтого	4.30
полшáтого	4.30

- C** To give the time on the left-hand side of the clock (i.e. after the half-hour), the preposition *без* (*without*) is needed. This preposition is followed by the genitive case.

без десяти (минут) шесть	5.50 (without ten minutes six; the word минут is optional)
без чéтверти шесть	5.45 (without quarter six)

- D** Пóлдень means *midnight* and пóлночЬ means *mid-day*; в пóлночЬ means *at midnight*.

- E** To answer the question *At what time?* (В котóром часу? Во скóлько?), use the preposition *в* + *accusative* for the right-hand side of the clock:

в дéсять минúт пáтого	at 4.10
-----------------------	---------

For the half hour, use *в* + *prepositional*:

в полови́не пáтого	at 4.30
--------------------	---------

For the left-hand side of the clock, *в* is not needed:

без чéтверти шесть	at 5.45
--------------------	---------

- F** You can also state the time by just using cardinal numerals (i.e. by using the twenty-four hour clock):

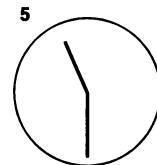
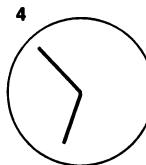
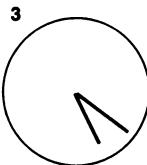
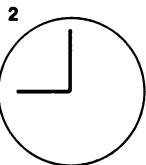
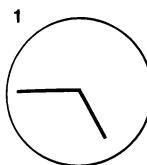
Скóлько врéмени? одýннадцать	<i>What time is it? 11.30</i>
трíдцать	

В котóром часу? в восемнáдцать	<i>At what time? At 18.15</i>
пятнáдцать	

45 Telling the time - Exercises

1 Say what time it is using the twelve-hour clock:

e.g. Котóрый час? 2.10 → дéсять минут трéтьего



2 Say when the trains leave using the twenty-four hour clock.

e.g. Пермь 18.30 → Пóезд в Пермь отхóдит в восемнáдцать тридцать. *The train for Perm leaves at 18.30.*

1 Новосибíрск – 07.15

2 Тверь – 14.55

3 Ялта – 21.35

4 Ворóнеж – 19.30

5 Кíров – 17.10

3 Complete the statements on the left by inserting the appropriate times in words, using the information given on the right. Use the twelve-hour clock.

1 Он встаёт в _____ *He gets up at 7.00.*

2 Он зáвтракает в _____ *He has breakfast at 7.15.*

3 Егó рабóчий день
начинáется в _____
His working day begins at 8.45.

4 Он обéдает в _____ *He has lunch at 1.35.*

5 Егó рабóчий день
кончáется в _____
His working day finishes at 5.30.

46 Dates

Dates, months, and years: how to use cardinal and ordinal numerals to answer the questions What is the date today? On what date? In which year?

The months of the year are written with a small initial letter. They are all masculine.

янвáрь феврálъ март	апрéль май иúнь	июль áвгуст сентябрь	октáбрь ноýбрь декáбрь
---------------------------	-----------------------	----------------------------	------------------------------

- A** To answer the question **Какóе сегóдня числó?** (*What is the date today?*), the neuter form of the ordinal numeral is used (to agree with **числó, date**) followed by the genitive case of the month:

Сегóдня пéрвое мáя. *Today it is the 1st of May.*

Note that in the case of compound numerals, only the last digit is in the ordinal form:

Сегóдня двáдцать сéдмое февралá. *Today it is the 27th of February.*

- B** To answer the question **Какóго числá?** (*On which date?*), the ordinal numeral must be put into the genitive case: **День рождéния моегó мúжa трéтьего октябрá,** *My husband's birthday is on the 3rd of October.*

- B** To answer the question **Какóй год?** (*Which year?*), Russian uses the following formula:

1999 = *the one thousand nine hundred and ninety-ninth year*

тысяча дéвятьсот девяносто девáтый год = 1999г.

i.e. the last digit is an ordinal numeral.

2000 = *the 2000th year* = *двухтысячный год* = 2000г.

2001 = *the two thousand and first year* = *две ты́сячи пéрвый год* = 2001г.

Note that the letter г. (for **год**) usually follows the year when it is written in figures.

- C** To answer the question **В какóм годú?** (*in which year?*), the ordinal numeral must be put into the prepositional case:

В ты́сяча девáтьсóт пятьдесáт трéтьем годú. *In 1953.*

If details of dates and months are given before the year, then the ordinal numeral must be put into the genitive case:

Онá родилáсь трíдцать пéрвого мáрта ты́сяча девáтьсóт четырнадцатого гóда. *She was born on 31st March 1914.*

► For the prepositional singular of adjectives, see Unit 32, for ordinal numerals and abbreviation of ordinal numerals, see Unit 44.

1 Write out the dates in words.

e.g. 2/5 Сего́дня второ́е ма́я.

- | | | |
|--------|--------|---------|
| 1 6/11 | 4 3/10 | 7 25/6 |
| 2 25/8 | 5 29/2 | 8 1/9 |
| 3 7/1 | 6 16/4 | 9 31/12 |

2 Explain where you will be on which dates.

e.g. 01/8 Пари́ж → Пे́рвого а́вгуста я бу́ду в Пари́же. *On the 1st of August I will be in Paris.*

- 1 10/8 Вене́ция
- 2 16/8 Берли́н
- 3 20/8 Москвá
- 4 25/8 Кíров
- 5 30/8 Нóвгород

3 Complete the sentences on the left and match them with their meanings on the right.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1 Я поéду во Фра́нцию _____. | a <i>Her birthday is on 7th March.</i> |
| 2 Мы получи́ли письмо _____. | b <i>I am going to France on 18th August.</i> |
| 3 Он позвонíл мне _____. | c <i>They left Germany on 22nd November.</i> |
| 4 Её день рожде́ния _____. | d <i>We received the letter on 3rd April.</i> |
| 5 Онí уéхали из Гермáнии _____. | e <i>He rang me on 30th January.</i> |

4 Write out in words the years in which these Russian poets were born.

- 1 Пúшкин родíлся в 1799г.
- 2 Лéрмонтов родíлся в 1814г.
- 3 Блок родíлся в 1880г.
- 4 Ахмáтова родилáсь в 1889г.
- 5 Пастернáк родíлся в 1890г.
- 6 Цветáева родилáсь в 1892г.

47 Prices, ages, weights and measurements

In Russian quantities of currency are measured in roubles and kopeks, weights in grams and kilograms and distances in metres and kilometres.

The rules governing use of cardinal numerals are important when dealing with prices, weights and measurements (adjectival agreements with the numeral 1; genitive singular after 2, 3, 4 and compounds of 2, 3, 4; genitive plural after quantities more than 5).

- A** Russian exchange rates have varied dramatically in recent years; when inflation was at its highest the kopek (копейка) disappeared, but normally the main unit of currency, the rouble (рубль) consists of 100 kopeks:

один рубль	одна копейка
два рубля	две копейки
пять рублей	пять копеек
двадцать один рубль	двадцать одна копейка
двадцать два рубля	двадцать две копейки
двадцать пять рублей	двадцать пять копеек

Note that the abbreviations for рубль and копейка are: р. and к.:

11р.22к. 11 roubles 22 kopeks

- B** The dative case is used to express age, with the word for year (год), which has the genitive plural лет: Сколько ему лет? (literally: *how many to him of years?*): Ему 15 лет (21 год, 22 года, 25 лет), *He is 15 (21, 22, 25).*

- C** The words *litre*, *gram* and *kilogram* have passed straight into Russian as литр, грамм, килогráмм (often shortened to килó). The prefix пол- is used to indicate half a litre or half a kilogramme). Note that the word грамм has two acceptable forms of the genitive plural: either грамм or грáммов:

его вес – сéмьдесят	his weight is 70 kilos
килогráммов	
полкилó апельси́нов	half a kilo of oranges
двéсти грáмм(ов) сýрыа	200 grams of cheese
литр молокá	a litre of milk

The abbreviation for килогráмм is кг.

- D** Distance in Russian is measured in metres and kilometres (метр and киломéтр).

Его рост в два метра.	His height is 2 metres.
От города до дачи –	From the town to the dacha it is
двадцать киломéтров.	20 kilometres.
Мы живём в двадцати	We live 20 kilometres from the dacha.

The abbreviation for киломéтр is км.

► For use of cardinal numerals, see Units 41–43, for the dative case, see Units 13, 14, 28, 29 and 49.

47

Prices, ages, weights and measurements – Exercises

1 Ask the question and give the answer, indicating the price of each item.

e.g. зúбная пáста/11р. → Скóлько стóит зúбная пáста?
Одýннадцать рублéй. *How much is the toothpaste? Eleven roubles.*

- 1 деревýнный стол/1250р. wooden table
- 2 японский телевíзор/3000р. Japanese television
- 3 конвéрт/3р.20к envelope
- 4 кра́сная рúчка/15р.50к. red pen
- 5 бутылка кра́сного винá/40р. bottle of red wine

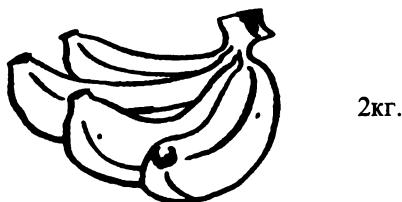
2 Explain how old each member of the family is.

e.g. Дéдушка /88 → Дéдушке вóсемьдесят вóсемь лет. *Grandfather is 88 years old.*

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1 Бáбушка/81 | grandmother |
| 2 Мать/55 | mother |
| 3 Отéц/54 | father |
| 4 Сын/32 | son |
| 5 Дочь/30 | daughter |
| 6 Внук/16 | grandson |

3 What quantities have been bought?

e.g. Два килогráмма банáнов



2кг.

- | | |
|-------------------|--------|
| 1 хлеб/4кг. | bread |
| 2 мясо/½ кг. | meat |
| 3 сáхар/5кг. | sugar |
| 4 помидóр/3кг. | tomato |
| 5 апельси́н/6 кг. | orange |

48 UNIT Personal pronouns (1)

Personal pronouns (I, you, he, she, it etc.) can stand in place of a noun to indicate who or what is involved in an action.

- A** In the following table the personal pronouns are in the nominative case.

Singular	Grammatical name	Plural	Grammatical name
я, I	first person singular	мы, we	first person plural
ты, you	second person singular	вы, you	second person plural
он, he, it	third person singular	они́, they	third person plural
она́, she, it	third person singular		
онó, it	third person singular		

- B** In the nominative case, the personal pronoun stands in front of the verb in both statement and question:

Вы рабо́таете в Москв́е? *Do you work in Moscow?*

Да, я рабо́таю в Москв́е *Yes, I work in Moscow.*

- C You:** The second person singular ты is used to address people you know very well and for children and pets. Вы is the formal way of addressing one person and it is also the only way of addressing more than one person (whether you know them well or not). Вы is usually written with a capital letter if you are writing to someone.

- D He, she, it, they:** Он is used when you are dealing with a masculine singular noun:

Телевизор не рабо́тает → Он не рабо́тает

The television isn't working → It isn't working

Врач не рабо́тает → Он не рабо́тает

The doctor isn't working → He isn't working

Она́ is used in the place of feminine nouns (*she, it*) and онó with neuter nouns (*it*):

Ольга рабо́тает? → Она́ рабо́тает?

Is Olga working? → Is she working?

Рáдио рабо́тает? → Онó рабо́тает?

Is the radio working? → Is it working?

Онý is the only word for *they*, irrespective of gender:

Ольга и врач рабо́тают? → Онý рабо́тают?

Are Olga and the doctor working? Are they working?

- E** The personal pronoun is not left out in written Russian, but is sometimes omitted in conversational language:

Хóчешь чай? Да, хочу́. *Do you want some tea? Yes, I do (want some).*

48^н**Personal pronouns (1) – Exercises**

1 Replace the people underlined with a personal pronoun.

e.g. Татьяна в школе → Она в школе. *Tatyana is in school* → *She is in school.*

- 1 Мой брат в офисе.
- 2 Медсестра и врач в больнице
- 3 Бабушка и ты в театре
- 4 Сестра и я в Москве.
- 5 Вадим и Андрей в Сибири

2 Replace the nouns underlined with a personal pronoun.

e.g. Радио на столе → Он о на столе. *The radio is on the table* → *It is on the table.*

- 1 Нож на столе *The knife is on the table.*
- 2 Метро в Москве *The metro is in Moscow.*
- 3 Виза в сумке *The visa is in the bag.*
- 4 Велосипед и мотоцикл на улице *The bicycle and the motorbike are in the street.*
- 5 Яблоки в магазине *The apples are in the shop.*

3 Which of the following people would you address as вы and which as ты?

- | | |
|----------------|---------------------|
| 1 муж | <i>husband</i> |
| 2 сын | <i>son</i> |
| 3 собака | <i>dog</i> |
| 4 начальник | <i>boss</i> |
| 5 новый клиент | <i>new customer</i> |

4 Match the sentences on the left with those on the right.

- | | |
|----------------------------|--|
| 1 Я не знаю, где он живёт. | a <i>You live in town.</i> |
| 2 Мы живём в деревне. | b <i>They know where he is.</i> |
| 3 Они знают, где он. | c <i>She doesn't know where you are.</i> |
| 4 Ты живёшь в городе. | d <i>We live in a village.</i> |
| 5 Она не знает, где вы. | e <i>I don't know where they live.</i> |

49 NiТ Personal pronouns (2)

There is no special word order for pronouns within a sentence, but they do have different forms for the accusative, genitive, dative, instrumental and prepositional cases.

A	Nom.	я	ты	он/онó	онá	мы	вы	онý
Acc.	меня́	тебя́	егó	её	нас	вас	их	
Gen.	меня́	тебя́	егó	её	нас	вас	их	
Dat.	мне	тебé	ему́	ей	нам	вам	им	
Instr.	мной	тобо́й	им	ей	на́ми	вáми	йми	
Prep.	мне	тебé	нём	ней	нас	вас	них	

Б Note that the cases of он are identical to those of онó.

В The accusative/genitive form of он/онó (егó) is pronounced *yeho* (i.e. the letter г is pronounced as a y).

Г If you are using the ^{Accusative} nominative, genitive, dative, instrumental or prepositional case of он/онó/онá/онý after a preposition, add an н to the front of the pronoun:

Я играю в теннис с **ним**. *I play tennis with him.*

(The prepositional case always involves the use of a preposition and this is why the prepositional case of он/онó/онá/онý in the table above starts with the letter н).

Д Phrases which include ... and I (e.g. *you and I*) start with мы in Russian:

мы с **вáми** *you and I* (lit: *we with you*)

мы с **ней** *she and I* (lit: *we with her*)

If you want to say about me note that the preposition о becomes обо:

обо **мне** *about me*

If you want to say with me note that the preposition с becomes со:

со **мной** *with me*

Е Russian prefers to use the personal pronoun (rather than the possessive adjective) when talking about parts of the body:

У меня́ болит голова́. *My head aches.*

Ж Russian can use the personal pronoun instead of the possessive adjective when talking about place:

У меня́ в кóмнате *In my room*

49^н Personal pronouns (2) – Exercises

1 Match the phrases on the left and the right, using the English translations as a guide.

- | | |
|------------------|------------|
| 1 Я рабо́таю | а с не́й |
| 2 Он рабо́тает | б с ни́м |
| 3 Ты рабо́таешь | с с вáми |
| 4 Они́ рабо́тают | д с на́ми |
| 5 Вы рабо́таете | е со мно́й |

- 1 *I work with him.*
- 2 *He works with you (polite).*
- 3 *You (familiar) work with me.*
- 4 *They work with her.*
- 5 *You (formal) work with us.*

2 The verb звони́ть (*to ring, telephone*) takes the dative case. Explain who is ringing whom today.

e.g. Ивáн/я → Сего́дня Ивáн звони́т мне

- 1 я/ты
- 2 Ольга/мы
- 3 Он/вы
- 4 Сáша/она
- 5 Ты/он

3 Who has a headache? Complete the following sentences by giving the genitive of the personal pronouns in brackets.



У него́ боли́т головá

- 1 У _____ (ты) боли́т головá
- 2 У _____ (она) боли́т головá
- 3 У _____ (вы) боли́т головá

4 Explain who is invited to your party by putting the personal pronouns in brackets into the accusative case.

• Я приглашаю _____ (ты) на вечеринку → Я приглашаю тебя на вечеринку. *I invite you to a party.*

- 1 Я приглашаю _____ (он) на вечеринку.
- 2 Я приглашаю _____ (они) на вечеринку.
- 3 Я приглашаю _____ (вы) на вечеринку.

50 UNIT Possessive pronouns

The possessive pronoun (*mine, yours, his etc.*) is formed in exactly the same way as the possessive adjective, but remember that it replaces the adjective and the noun: Is this your book? Yes, it's mine.

- A If you are indicating possession by *me, you, us* then the possessive pronoun must agree in number, gender and case with what is possessed (not with the possessor). Here are the forms of the possessive pronouns *mine, yours, ours* in the nominative case:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
mine	мой	мо́й	мо́ё	мо́й
yours <i>belonging to</i> ты	твой	тво́й	тво́ё	твой
ours	наш	на́ша	на́шё	на́ши
yours <i>belonging to</i> вы	ваш	вáша	вáшё	вáши

Это твой книга Вадим? Да, мой.

Is this your book, Vadim? Yes, it's mine.

Это твой журнал, Катя? Да, мой.

Is this your magazine, Katya? Yes it's mine.

- B The possessive pronouns for *his, hers, its, theirs* are invariable (i.e. they never change):

<i>belonging to</i> он: егó	<i>belonging to</i> онá: еë	<i>belonging to</i> онó: ерó	<i>belonging to</i> онý: их
--------------------------------	--------------------------------	---------------------------------	--------------------------------



Это книга Вадима? Да, егó.

Is this Vadim's book? Yes, it's his.

Это журнал Кати? Да, еë.

Is this Katya's magazine? Yes, it's hers.

50 НАУКИ

Possessive pronouns – Exercises

1 Make questions from the following items and give the answer using possessive pronouns.

e.g. онá/машина → Это её машина? Да, её. *Is it her car? Yes, it's hers.*

- | | |
|------------------|------------|
| 1 он/дом | house |
| 2 онý/ собáка | dog |
| 3 вы/ пáспорт | passport |
| 4 я/пíсьмо | letter |
| 5 мы/ фотогráфия | photograph |

2 A mix-up! Explain to Vadim that he's giving lost property out to the wrong people. Use the English translations as a guideline.

e.g. Пáвел/рúчка/mine Пáвел, вот тво́й рúчка. Нет, это не мой. Pavel, here's your pen. No, it's not mine.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1 Кáтя/пíсьмо/ mine | Katya, here's your letter. No, it's not mine |
| 2 Вíктор/свíтер/mine | Viktor, here's your sweater. No, it's not mine. |
| 3 Сáша и Аня/кнíги/ours | Sasha and Anya, here are your books. No, they're not ours. |
| 4 Светлáна и Тáня/ фотогráфии/ours | Svetlana and Tanya, here are your photographs. No, they're not ours. |
| 5 Андрéй/рубáшка/mine | Andrei, here's your shirt. No, it's not mine. |

3 Match the phrases on the right and left, using the English translation as a guide.

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------|
| 1 Паспорта в твоей сúмкé? | a Да, твоё |
| 2 Ключи в её машине? | b Да, их |
| 3 Пíсьмо о ваших билéтах? | c Да, её |
| 4 Э́то моё винó? | d Да, в моéй |
| 5 Э́то их áдрес? | e Да, о на́ших |

- | |
|--|
| 1 Are the passports in your bag? Yes, they're in mine. |
| 2 Are the keys in her car? Yes, they're in hers. |
| 3 Is the letter about our tickets? Yes, ours. |
| 4 Is this my wine? Yes, it's yours. |
| 5 Is this their address? Yes, it's theirs. |

51 UNIT

Interrogative pronouns

If you want to ask the questions **What?** **Who?** **Which/what sort of?** **Whose?** then you need to use interrogative pronouns

- A** Что (*what*) is needed when you are asking about the identity of something:

Что это? Рисунок или *What is it? A drawing or a photograph?*
фотография?

The phrase **что это** такоё? means *what is that?*

Что can also be used in its different case forms to make questions:

Nom.	что	Dat.	чему
Acc.	что	Instr.	чем
Gen.	чего	Prep.	чём

e.g. О чём вы говорите? *What are you talking about?*

- B** Кто is used when you want to find out the identity of a person:

Кто это? Это новый *Who is that? Is it the new director?*
директор?

Кто can also be used in its different case forms to make questions:

Nom.	кто	Dat.	кому
Acc.	кто	Instr.	кем
Gen.	кого	Prep.	ком

e.g. О ком вы говорите? *Who are you talking about?*

Note that Russian always uses **кто** when referring to people, unlike English which sometimes uses **what**, for example:

Кем вы хотите быть? *What do you want to be?* (lit: As whom
do you want to be?)

- C** Какой means *which/what/what sort of* when you are requesting specific detail about something. It is a stressed adjective (and so works in the same way, eg, as **молодой** – young):

Какой у них дом? *What sort of house have they got?*

В каких городах вы были? *Which cities did you visit?* (lit: were
you in)

- D** Чей means *whose*, used when you are trying to find out what belongs to whom. It must agree with the noun it precedes:

Masculine singular Чей это паспорт? *Whose passport is this?*

Feminine singular Чья это виза? *Whose visa is this?*

Neuter singular Чьё это место? *Whose place is this?*

Plural Чьи это билеты? *Whose tickets are these?*

51

Interrogative pronouns – Exercises

1 Match the phrases on the left with the translations on the right:

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1 О чём онá дúмаеt? | a Who is he going to the theatre with? |
| 2 Чем он занимáеtся? | b Who do you know? |
| 3 С кем он идёт в тéатр? | c What is she thinking about? |
| 4 Кем ты хóчешь быtь? | d What do you want to be? |
| 5 Кого вы знаéte? | e What is he busy with? |

2 Find out about someone's purchases by making questions from the information below and using the interrogative pronoun *какóй*.

e.g. газéта → Какóу газéту вы покупáeтe? *Which/what sort of newspaper are buying?*

- | | |
|--------------|---------|
| 1 квартира | flat |
| 2 автомобиль | car |
| 3 окно | window |
| 4 велосипéд | bicycle |
| 5 книги | books |

3 Ask what belongs to whom, using the interrogative pronoun *чей*.

e.g. тóфли → чьи это тóфли? *Whose are these shoes?*

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| 1 гáлстук | tie |
| 2 чемодáн | suitcase |
| 3 юбка | skirt |
| 4 плáтье | dress |
| 5 носки | socks |

4 Translate these sentences into Russian.

- 1 Which newspaper are you reading?
- 2 What are you thinking about?
- 3 Who are you going to the shop with?
- 4 What is this? A book or a magazine?
- 5 Whose are these children?

52^N_IT| Demonstrative pronouns

To indicate this, that, such you need to use the demonstrative pronouns **этот**, **тот**, **такой**.

- A** **Этот** means *this* (something close by) and **тот** means *that* (something not so close):

Вы предпочитáете **этот** гáлстук **и́ли** **тот**? *Do you prefer this tie or that one?*

Этот and **тот** have case endings which are very similar to those of adjectives:

	Masculine and Neuter	Feminine	Plural
Nom.	этот/тот	этa/та	эти/те
Acc.	этот (этого*)/тот (тогó*)	этu/ту	эти (этих*)/те (тех*)
Gen.	этого/тогó	этой/той	этих/тех
Dat.	этому/томú	этой/той	этим/тем
Instr.	этим/тем	этой/той	этими/тéми
Prep.	этом/том	этой/той	этих/тех

* = animate accusative

- B** Note that **это** also has the meanings *this is, that is, these are, those are*. In this meaning, its ending never changes:

Это мой муж *This is my husband.* Это моí дéти *These are my children.*

- B** **Тот** also has the meanings of *the latter* and *the same* (when used with **же**):

Она́ получíла подáрки от Борýса и Сергéя. Тот подарайл ей духý.
She received presents from Boris and Sergei. The latter gave her perfume.
Она́ получíла тот же подáрок от менá.
She received the same present from me.

The phrase **тот же** can also be used with **сáмый** to mean *the very same*:

Она́ получíла те же сáмые духý от менá.

She received the very same perfume from me.

- C** The demonstrative pronoun **такóй** means *such* and is used in combination with long adjectives. It declines like stressed adjectives such as **молодóй, young**:

Такáя красíвая картина в такóм интересном музéе.
Such a beautiful picture in such an interesting museum.

1 Ask about preference by using the demonstrative pronouns *этот* and *тот*.

e.g. дом → Вы предпочитáете ётот дом юли тот дом, вон там? *Do you prefer this house or that house over there?*

1 пальто	coat
2 шáпка	hat
3 шарф	scarf
4 рубáшка	shirt
5 тýфли	shoes

2 Complete the sentences by giving the Russian for the word in brackets.

- 1 Кто _____ (*is it*)? _____ наш врач.
- 2 Онý живýт в _____ (*this*) дóмे.
- 3 Вчérá мы бýли в теáтре с Борýсом и Сергéем. _____ (*the latter*) рабóтает врачóм.
- 4 Вы ужé знаéте об _____ (*this*) проблéме?
- 5 Вот _____ (*the same*) кни́га!
- 6 Он получýл _____ (*the very same*) гáлстук.
- 7 Мы читáем _____ (*the same*) газéту.
- 8 Онý рабóтают на _____ (*these*) завóдах.
- 9 Я идú в теáтр с _____ (*such*) интересными друзья́ми.
- 10 Лúчшиe магазíны на _____ (*this*) улице.

3 Choose the appropriate word from the box to complete the following sentences.

эту это каку́ю такáя

- 1 В _____ гóроде ты живёшь?
- 2 Кто _____?
- 3 Это _____ краси́вая фотогráфия!
- 4 _____ шáпку ты предпочтáешь?

53 UNIT Determinative pronouns

Determinative pronouns make it clear who or what is involved; in Russian they are: **весь (all)**, **каждый (every)**, **любой (any)**, **сам (...self)** and **самый (the very)**.

- A** The pronoun **весь** indicates *all, the whole*:

Он работал **весь** день. *He worked all day.*

Мы приглашаем **всю** группу. *We invite the whole group.*

Весь declines as follows:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	весь	вся	весь	все
Acc.	весь/ всегó*	всю	весь/ всегó*	все/всех*
Gen.	всегó	всей	всегó	всех
Dat.	всему́	всей	всему́	всем
Instr.	всем	всей	всем	всёми
Prep.	всём	всей	всём	всех

* = animate accusative

- B** **Каждый** means *every* and declines like an unstressed adjective (i.e. it declines like **новый**):

Он работает **каждое** утро. *He works every morning.*

- В** **Любой** means *any* and declines like a stressed adjective (i.e. it declines like **молодой**, *young*):

Позвоните мне в **любое** **время** *Ring me at any time.*

- Г** **Сам (himself)** declines like **этот** (so, for example **сама** means *herself*) and it must agree with the noun it defines:

Мы пригласили **самого** **президента**. *We invited the president himself.*

- Д** **Самый** declines like an unstressed adjective (i.e. it declines like **новый**). It makes the location of something very specific:

В **самом** **центре** **города**. *Right in the centre (in the very centre) of town.*

► For unstressed adjectives, see Unit 20, for stressed adjectives, see Unit 21.

1 Match the phrases on the left with their translations on the right:

- 1 Я пишú ей кáждый день. a *The teacher himself said this.*
 2 Приходí в любой день. b *I write to her every day.*
 3 Мы были в óфисе весь вéчер. c *Come on any day.*
 4 Сам учýтель сказáл éто. d *I will wait for you right by the entrance.*
 5 Я подождú тебý у сáмого вхóда. e *We were in the office all evening.*

2 Choose the appropriate word from the box below to complete each sentence. Use the English translations which follow as a guide.

всей кáждого любóм сам самомý

1 Мóжно купítъ мáрки в _____ магазíне.

2 _____ композýтор идёт на концéрт.

3 Есть такíе городá по _____ Англии.

4 У менý подáрки для _____ ребёнка.

5 Он идёт к _____ дирéктору.

1 *It is possible to buy stamps in any shop.*

2 *The composer himself is going to the concert.*

3 *There are such towns throughout England.*

4 *I have presents for every child.*

5 *He is going to see the director himself.*

3 Translate into Russian.

1 We work every day.

2 The actress herself is going to the theatre.

3 I will wait right by the library.

4 All our friends are going to the concert.

5 Which tickets do you want? Any.

4 Answer the questions according to the instruction in English.

1 Где мóжно купítъ чай? *in any shop*

2 Где мóжно купítъ кóфе? *in every shop*

3 Где мóжно купítъ молокó? *in all shops*

4 Где мóжно купítъ винó? *in the centre itself (right in the centre)*

54 Unit | Reflexive pronouns

The reflexive pronoun **себя** means *self* and it must refer back to the subject of the verb; it is used when self would be either stated or implied.

- A In English we might say *He is bringing the camera with him* (in other words, we don't actually say *with himself*, but this is what is implied). In Russian this would require the use of the reflexive pronoun **себя**: Он берёт с собой фотоаппарат.



- B The pronoun **себя** declines as follows:

Accusative	себя
Genitive	себя
Dative	себе
Instrumental	себой
Prepositional	себе

Note that is used for all persons (*myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves*) and that it does not exist in the nominative.

- B Себя is often required after prepositions in contexts where we would not state the word *self* in English, for example:

Он видит пёред собой
большую собачку. *He sees a big dog in front of him(self)*

Мы закрыли за собой
дверь. *We closed the door behind us
(ourselves)*

Он купил шоколад для себя. *He bought the chocolate for himself.*

- C Note the useful phrase **само собой разумеется** (*it stands to reason*). The reflexive pronoun is also used to make certain common verbs, e.g.:

вести себя *to behave*

представлять себе *to imagine*

чувствовать себя *to feel*

1 Put an asterisk by the words which would have to be followed by a reflexive pronoun in Russian (hint: there are five).

The tourist came into his room and shut the door behind him. He saw in front of him a large room with a bed, a chair and a washbasin, but no towels. He was glad he had brought some with him. As he was feeling rather tired, he decided to have a wash and a sleep, although he imagined that the bed would not be very comfortable.

2 Match the phrases on the left with their translations on the right.

- | | |
|------------------------------|---|
| 1 Как вы себя чёувствуете? | a <i>How is he behaving?</i> |
| 2 Как он ведёт себя? | b <i>Are you bringing the money with you?</i> |
| 3 Вы берёте с собой дёныги? | c <i>You only think about yourself!</i> |
| 4 Что вы видите пёред собой? | d <i>How are you feeling?</i> |
| 5 Вы дўмаете только о себе! | e <i>What can you see in front of you?</i> |

3 Choose the appropriate word from the box in order to complete the following sentences, using the English translation as a guide.

себя	себé	собóй
------	------	-------

- 1 Он хорошо ведёт_____.
- 2 Я представляю _____, что это трудно.
- 3 Закрой за _____ дверь!
- 4 Я плохо чёувствую_____.
- 5 Мы купили шампáнское для_____.

- 1 *He is behaving well.*
- 2 *I imagine that it is difficult.*
- 3 *Close the door behind you!*
- 4 *I feel ill.*
- 5 *We bought the champagne for ourselves.*

4 Translate into Russian.

- 1 *What did you buy for yourself?*
- 2 *He thinks only about himself.*
- 3 *I am bringing the wine with me.*
- 4 *We are bringing the dog with us.*

55 Relative pronouns (1)

Который *is a relative pronoun which is used after nouns to mean who, which, that.*

- A Russian uses the adjective **который** as a linking word between parts of the sentence to indicate *who, which, that*. For example: *The young man is skiing.* *The young man is the former world champion.* → *The young man who is skiing is the former world champion.*

Молодой человек,
который катается
на лыжах, экс-чемпион
мира.



Который refers to both people and things:

Машину, которую он купил, очень маленькая.

The car which he has bought is very small.

Note that the phrase including **который** is enclosed by commas.

- B Который is an adjective, so it has masculine, feminine, neuter and plural endings for all six cases. In order to work out the gender and the number, first look at the noun which it follows; in order to work out the case, work out what 'job' **который** is doing in the second part of the sentence. For example, is it a subject or an object?:

Актриса, которая (*subject*) играет роль Ольги, очень талантливая.

The actress who is playing the role of Olga is very talented.

Актриса, которую (*object, therefore accusative*) вы любите, очень талантливая.

The actress whom you like is very talented.

- B If the **который** part of the sentence involves a preposition, that preposition must always come in front of **который**.

Офис, в котором мы работаем, не очень большой.

The office in which (prepositional case after в) is not very big.

Друзья, с которыми мы отдыхали, живут в Лондоне.

The friends with whom (instrumental case after с) we were on holiday live in London.

NB Который is only for use after nouns; to say 'that' after verbs, don't use **который**, use что:

Я думаю, что они приедут.

I think that they will come.

55

Relative pronouns (1) – Exercises

1 Make sentences about the following people's jobs, with **который** referring to the subject in the nominative case.

e.g. Владíмир/Киев/врач → Владимир, который живёт в Киеве, врач.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 Ольга/Киев/продавщица | 4 Саша/Воронеж/юрист |
| 2 Нáши друзья/Можáйск/учителéй | 5 Аня/Ялта/медсестрá |
| 3 Виктор/Москвá/переводчик | 6 Вадим/Обнинск/гид |

2 Describe what Olga has just bought, with **который** referring to the object in the accusative case:

e.g. апельсины/вкусные → Апельсины, которые Ольга купила, очень вкусные.

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1 велосипéд/большóй | bicycle/big |
| 2 джинсы/мóдные | jeans/fashionable |
| 3 цветы/красíвые | flowers/beautiful |
| 4 юбка/корóткая | skirt/short |

3 Complete the sentences using the preposition and the relative pronoun **который**. The case is given in brackets at the end of the sentence.

e.g. Стол, под _____ сидит кóшка, в углу. (под + *instr.*) → Стол, под которым сидит кóшка, в углу. *The chair, under which the cat is sitting is in the corner.*

- | | |
|---|----------------------|
| 1 Друг, к _____ мы идём, музыкант. | (к + <i>instr.</i>) |
| 2 Здания, в _____ они работают, очень большие. | (в + <i>prep.</i>) |
| 3 Врач, с _____ она говорила, очень добрый. | (с + <i>instr.</i>) |
| 4 Фильм, о _____ вы говорите, не очень хороший. | (о + <i>prep.</i>) |
| 5 Студéнты, от _____ мы получили письмо, работают в Африке. | (от + <i>gen.</i>) |

4 Use **который** to make one sentence in Russian out of two using the English sentence as a guide:

e.g. Мой дáдя инженéр. Ты говорил с ним вчera. *My uncle, with whom you spoke yesterday, is an engineer.* → Мой дáдя, с которым вы говорили вчera, инженéр.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 Собáка очень стáрая. Ты фотографировал её. | <i>The dog which you photographed is very old.</i> |
| 2 Шкóла очень хóрошая.
Ты говоришь о ней. | <i>The school about which you are speaking is very good.</i> |

56 | Relative pronouns (2)

As well as being interrogative pronouns, что (what) and кто (who) are also used as relative pronouns.

A ЧТО is used as:

- a relative pronoun to всё (all, everything): У меня́ всё, что надо, I have everything (that) I need
- It is also used with то (that) to link two parts of a sentence.

Notice that both то and что must decline according to the context:

Я расскажу́ вам о том, что я знаю́.

I'll tell you about (that which) what I know.

Мы начнём с того́, чем мы занимáлись вчера́.

We'll start with what (literally 'from that which') we were busy with yesterday.

- It is used to 'sum up' a previous part of the sentence (i.e. it links up to the whole of the preceding clause):

Он расска́зывал нам о своё́й поездке в Африку, что бы́ло очень интересно.

He told us about his trip to Africa, which was very interesting.

B Кто is used as a relative pronoun

- after тот (the one...):

Тот, кто хо́чет прийтí на вечерíнку.

Whoever (literally 'the one who') wants to come to the party.

- after все (everyone)

Я приглашаю́ всех, кто хо́чет прийтí на вечерíнку.

I invite all who want to come to the party.

Notice that кто is always followed by a singular verb (as it is in English).

56

Relative pronouns (2) –
Exercises

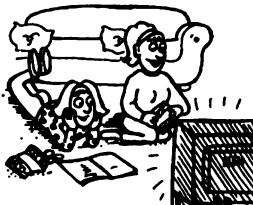
1 Match each Russian phrase with its translation.

- 1 Я дам вам всё, что надо.
 2 Мы интересуемся тем, что вы говорите.
 3 Тот, кто не möchte танцевать, может отдохнуть.
 4 Эти места для тех, кто уже купил билеты.
 5 Я расскажу вам обо всём, что случилось.
- a These places are for those who have already bought their tickets.
 b Whoever (the one who) does not want to dance can rest.
 c I will tell you about everything that (all that which) happened.
 d I will give you everything (all that) you need.
 e We are interested in what (that which) you say.

2 Choose the appropriate word from the box below to complete each sentence. English translations are given as a guide:

КТО ЧТО

- 1 Все, ____ смотрели фильм, говорят, что хороший.
 2 Он знает всех, ____ придет на вечеринку.
 3 Они забыли билеты, ____ было очень плохо.
 4 Я начну с того, ____ он сказал мне.
 5 Он сказал мне все, ____ он знал.
 6 Они смотрят телевизор каждый вечер, ____ очень плохо.



- 1 Everyone (all) who watched the film says that it is good.
 2 He knows everyone (all) who is (are) coming to the party.
 3 They have forgotten the tickets, which is very bad.
 4 I will start with what (that which) he told me.
 5 He told me everything (that) he knows.
 6 They watch television every evening, which is bad.

57 Unit | Indefinite pronouns

The particles *-то* and *-нибудь* can be added to the pronouns *кто*, *что*, *какой* to give the Russian for *someone*, *something*, *some...* or *other*.

- A** If we add the particle *-то* to the Russian word for *who* we get the Russian for *someone*:

Кто-то позвонил, когда вы были на работе.

Someone rang while you were at work.

Борис говорил кому-то, когда зазвонил телефон.

Boris was talking to someone when the telephone rang.

Kто-то indicates a particular person, who definitely was involved or is involved in an action, but the identity of that one particular person is not known.

The particle *-то* has the same specific force if it is added to *что* or *какой*:

Врач дал ей что-то от кашля.

The doctor gave her something for her cough.

Врач дал ей какое-то лекарство.

The doctor gave her some medicine or other.

- B** If we add the particle *-нибудь* to the Russian word for *who* we get another way of saying *someone*, but this time in a vague sense, not implying one specific person:

Если кто-нибудь позвонит, запишите их номер телефона.

If someone (anyone) rings, write down their telephone number.

Дайте билеты кому-нибудь в офисе.

Give the tickets to someone (anyone) in the office.

The particle *-нибудь* has the same vague force if it is added to *что* or *какой*:

Расскажи нам что-нибудь о России.

Tell us something (anything at all) about Russia.

Купите какие-нибудь таблетки.

Buy some tablets or other (any tablets).

- B** Note that these particles can also be used with adverbs of time and place.

<i>-то (specific)</i>	<i>-нибудь (vague)</i>
где-то somewhere	где-нибудь somewhere/anywhere
куда-то somewhere (direction)	куда-нибудь somewhere/anywhere (direction)
когда-то once, at one time	когда-нибудь at any time, ever
как-то somehow	как-нибудь somehow, anyhow
почему-то for some reason	почему-нибудь for some/any reason

Underline the words in the following passage where you would choose to use the particle -то and put a circle round the words where you would choose to use the particle -нибудь in Russian.

Someone called you this morning. He said something about a meeting tomorrow. For some reason he didn't want to talk to me. He just that if you can't be on time you should ring anyone in the office.

Now complete the Russian version of this passage with the appropriate phrases:

_____ позвонил тебе сегодня утром. Он сказал, _____ о совещании завтра. Он _____ не хотел говорить со мной. Он сказал только, что если вы не сможете приехать вовремя, надо позвонить _____ в офисе.

Complete each sentence by choosing the appropriate phrase from the box, using the English translations as a guide.

где-нибудь каком-то когда-нибудь кого-то что-нибудь что-то

- 1 Гид _____ сказал об экскурсии в музей.
 - 2 Вы были _____ в Москве?
 - 3 Напишите _____ о вашей семье!
 - 4 Он хочет отдохнуть _____ на юге.
 - 5 Она уже знает _____ в оркестре.
 - 6 Я раньше работал в _____ офисе в Кирове.
- 1 *The guide said something about an excursion to a museum.*
 - 2 *Have you ever been to Moscow?*
 - 3 *Write something (anything at all) about your family!*
 - 4 *They want to go on holiday somewhere or other in the south.*
 - 5 *She already knows someone in the orchestra.*
 - 6 *Previously I worked in some office or other in Kirov.*

58 UNIT Regular present tense (1)

A present tense verb describes an action or a state that is taking place now, or that is ongoing. A large group of verbs follow a regular pattern of present tense endings: -ю, -ешь, -ет, -ем, -ете, -ют.

- A** To make the present tense, we must first of all look at the infinitive (the *to do* part of the verb). Verbs whose infinitive ends in the letters -ать usually belong to the ‘first conjugation’ – i.e. a group of verbs that form their present tense according to the same pattern. In Russian there is only one form of the present tense, so я рабо́таю is the only way of saying *I work, I do work, I am working*.
- B** In order to make the present tense of a verb ending in -ать the first thing to do is to remove the last two letters (ть), and then add the endings, which are different for each *person* of the verb. Here is the verb for *to work* (рабо́тать), the endings added to make the present tense are underlined:

я рабо́таю	<i>I work</i>
ты рабо́таешь	<i>you work</i>
он, онá, онó рабо́тает	<i>he, she, it works</i>
мы рабо́таем	<i>we work</i>
вы рабо́таете	<i>you work</i>
они́ рабо́тают	<i>they work</i>

- B** Occasionally, first conjugation infinitives end in -ять, as in the case of the verbs *to cough* (кашлять) and *to stroll* (гулять). Their present tense is made in just the same way as for verbs ending in -ать:

я гуля́ю	<i>I stroll</i>
ты гуля́ешь	<i>you stroll</i>
он, онá, онó гуля́ет	<i>he, she, it strolls</i>
мы гуля́ем	<i>we stroll</i>
вы гуля́ете	<i>you stroll</i>
они́ гуля́ют	<i>they stroll</i>

- C** Occasionally first conjugation infinitives end in -еть, as in the case of the verbs *to know how to* (уметь). Their present tense is made in just the same way as for verbs ending in -ать:

я уме́ю	<i>I know how to</i>
ты уме́ешь	<i>you know how to</i>
он, онá, онó уме́ет	<i>he, she, it knows how to</i>
мы уме́ем	<i>we know how to</i>
вы уме́ете	<i>you know how to</i>
они́ уме́ют	<i>they know how to</i>

► For personal pronouns and persons of the verb, see Unit 48.

58 Regular present tense (1) Exercises

1 Put the infinitives of these first conjugation verbs into the present tense to agree with their subject.

e.g. игрáть/он → он игрáет, *he is playing*

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1 знать/вы | to know |
| 2 понимáть/ты | to understand |
| 3 кáшлять/я | to cough |
| 4 рабóтать/она | to work |
| 5 отвеча́ть/они | to answer |
| 6 спрáшивать/мы | to ask |
| 7 покупáть/он | to buy |
| 8 гуля́ть/мы | to stroll |
| 9 слúшать/вы | to listen |
| 10 умéть/ты | to know how to |

2 Complete the sentences by filling in the correct verb endings.

e.g. Он _____ (читáть) газéту → Он читáет газéту. *He is reading a newspaper.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1 Вы _____ (слúшать) rádio. | <i>You are listening to the radio.</i> |
| 2 Мы _____ (игráть) в тéннис. | <i>We are playing tennis.</i> |
| 3 Ты _____ (покупáть) чай. | <i>You are buying tea.</i> |
| 4 Онá _____ (понимáть) вопроc? | <i>Does she understand the question?</i> |
| 5 Я _____ (знать) дирéктора. | <i>I know the director.</i> |

3 Complete each sentence with an appropriate verb from the box.

гуля́ют	игráешь	отвеча́ет	покупáю	понимáем
---------	---------	-----------	---------	----------

- 1 Я _____ нóвый компьютер.
- 2 Он _____ на вопроc.
- 3 Мы _____ вáшу проблему.
- 4 Ты _____ в футбóл?
- 5 Онí ча́сто _____ в пárке.

59 NIT Regular present tense (2)

A **present tense verb** describes an action or a state that is taking place now, or that is ongoing. A large group of verbs follow a regular pattern of present tense endings: -ю (-y), -ишь, -ит, -им, -ите, -ят -(ат).

- A** To make the present tense, we must first of all look at the infinitive (the *to do* part of the verb). Verbs whose infinitive ends in the letters **-ить** belong to the '*second conjugation*' – i.e. a group of verbs which all form their present tense according to the same pattern. In Russian there is only one form of the present tense, so **я говорю** is the only way of saying *I speak, I do speak, I am speaking*. (Notice that the ending for *I* is **-ю** and the ending for *they* is **-я**; because of the first spelling rule sometimes we need to change these endings to **-y** and **-a**).
- B** In order to make the present tense of a verb ending in **-ить** the first thing to do is to remove the last three letters (**ить**) to give the *stem*, and then add the endings, which are different for each *person* of the verb. Here is the verb *to speak* (**говорить**) with the endings added to make the present tense underlined:

я говорю	<i>I speak</i>	мы говорим	<i>we speak</i>
ты говоришь	<i>you speak</i>	вы говорите	<i>you speak</i>
он, она, оно говорит	<i>he, she, it speaks</i>	они говорят	<i>they speak</i>

- C** Sometimes second conjugation infinitives end in **-ять** or **-еть** as in the case of the verbs *to stand* (**стоять**) and *to look/watch* (**смотреть**). Their present tense is made in just the same way as for verbs ending in **-ить**:

я стою	<i>I stand</i>	я смотрю	<i>I look</i>
ты стоишь	<i>you stand</i>	ты смотришь	<i>you look</i>
он, она, оно стоит	<i>he, she, it stands</i>	он, она, оно смотрит	<i>he, she it looks</i>
мы стоим	<i>we stand</i>	мы смотрим	<i>we look</i>
вы стойте	<i>you stand</i>	вы смотрите	<i>you look</i>
они стоят	<i>they stand</i>	они смотрят	<i>they look</i>

- D** Occasionally second conjugation infinitives end in **-ать**, as in the case of the verbs *to shout* (**кричать**). Their present tense is made in just the same way as for verbs ending in **-ить**:

я кричу	<i>I shout</i>	мы кричим	<i>we shout</i>
ты кричишь	<i>you shout</i>	вы кричите	<i>you shout</i>
он, она, оно кричит	<i>he, she, it shouts</i>	они кричат	<i>they shout</i>

➤ For personal pronouns and persons of the verb, see Unit 48;
for first spelling rule, Unit 2.

59^н Regular present tense (2) — Exercises

1 Put the infinitives of these second conjugation verbs into the present tense to agree with their subject.

e.g. говорить/мы → мы говорим, we are speaking

1 смотреть/я	to look, watch
2 строить/ты	to build
3 стоить/оно	to cost
4 курить/вы	to smoke
5 варить/они	to cook
6 готовить/мы	to prepare
7 лежать/я	to lie (be lying down)
8 стоять/она	to stand
9 слышать/вы	to hear
10 говорить/ты	to speak

2 Complete the sentences by filling in the correct verb endings.

e.g. Он _____ (гото́вить) обед → Он гото́вит обе́д. He is preparing lunch.

- 1 Вы _____ (слы́шать) радио. You (can) hear the radio.
- 2 Мы _____ (сто́ять) у окна. We stand by the window.
- 3 Он́ _____ (стро́ить) дом. They are building a house.
- 4 Онá _____ (смотре́ть) фильм? Is she watching the film?
- 5 Ты _____ (звони́ть) директо́ру. You are ringing the director.

3 Complete each sentence with an appropriate verb from the box.

звоню	слы́шите	смотришь	стоит	стоят
-------	----------	----------	-------	-------

- 1 Я ча́сто _____ мойм друзья́м.
- 2 Вы _____ звонок телефона?
- 3 Кофе _____ 10 рубле́й.
- 4 Ты _____ футбо́л?
- 5 Он́ _____ у входа.

60^NT Present tense: consonant changes

Some second conjugation verbs change the final consonant of the stem in the first person singular only (i.e. in the I form of the present tense) before adding the endings -ю (-у), -ишь, -ит, -им, -ите, -ят (-ат). Note that the ending for I is -ю and the ending for they is -я; because of the first spelling rule sometimes we need to change these endings to -у and -а.

- Ⓐ If the stem of a second conjugation verb ends in -д, in the first person singular, the д changes to ж, as in the verb *to see*:

видеть я вижу ты видишь он видит мы видим вы видите они видят

- Ⓑ If the stem of a second conjugation verb ends in -з, in the first person singular, the з changes to ж, as in the verb *to take (by transport)*:

возить я возжу ты возишь он возит мы возим вы возите они возят

- Ⓑ If the stem of a second conjugation verb ends in -с, in the first person singular, the с changes to щ, as in the verb *to carry*:

носить я ношу ты носишь он носит мыносим выносите
они носят

- ⓘ If the stem of a second conjugation verb ends in -ст, in the first person singular, the ст changes to щ, as in the verb *to whistle*:

свистеть я свищу ты свистишь он свистит мы свистим
вы свистите они свистят

- Ⓐ If the stem of a second conjugation verb ends in -т, in the first person singular, the т changes to ч, as in the verb *to fly*:

лететь я лечу ты летишь он летит мы летим вы летите они летят

- Ⓔ If the stem of a second conjugation verb ends in б, в, м, п, ф, then in the first person singular, an extra л is added, as in the verb *to prepare*:

готобить я готоблю ты готобишь он готобит мы готобим
вы готобите они готобят

- ☒ Here is a summary of consonant changes (remember: they are *only for the я form of the present tense*):

д → ж	ст	→ щ
з → ж	т	→ ч
с → щ	б, в, м, п, ф	→ бл,вл,мл,пл,фл

1 All the verbs in the following list are second conjugation. Give the first person singular (x form) of the present tense of each one. (Hint: some need a consonant change and some don't).

1 любить	to like/love
2 спать	to sleep
3 говорить	to speak
4 сидеть	to sit
5 лазить	to climb
6 стоять	to stand
7 просить	to ask
8 смотреть	to look/watch
9 кормить	to feed
10 звонить	to ring/telephone

2 Complete the sentences with an appropriate verb from the box.

возит	гото́влю	летите	ношу́	сидйт
-------	----------	--------	-------	-------

- 1 Ольга _____ у телевизора.
- 2 Я _____ обед.
- 3 Автобус _____ пассажиров.
- 4 Я _____ письма на почту.
- 5 Сего́дня вы _____ на самолёте.

3 Match the phrases on the left and right, using the English translation as a guide

- | | |
|----------|--------------------------|
| 1 Фермер | a сидим у самого экрана. |
| 2 Вы | b кормит своих коров. |
| 3 Мы | c готовлю ужин на кухне. |
| 4 Я | d кричит он. |
| 5 Ура! | e спите всю ночь. |

- 1 *The farmer feeds his cows.*
- 2 *You sleep all night.*
- 3 *We sit right by the screen.*
- 4 *I prepare supper in the kitchen.*
- 5 *Hurrah! he shouts.*

61 Unit

Irregular present tense (1)

Not all verbs follow the regular patterns of the first and second conjugations, but most irregular verbs do follow a pattern of their own. The important thing is to know the stem and the first and second persons of an irregular verb.

- A** Most verbs which do not follow the pattern of the regular verbs described in Units 58 and 59 still have an infinitive ending **ть**; a few have infinitives ending in **-ти** or **-чъ**. In this Unit we will look at verbs with the irregular present tense endings:

-у	-ём
-ёшь	-ёте
-ёт	-ут

i.e. the **я** and **они** forms both feature the letter **у** and all the other forms have the letter **ё**.

- B** These endings are added to the *stem* of the verb. Each time you come across an irregular verb, it is important to learn the stem. Here are some common examples.

Infin.	Stem	я	ты	он, онá, онó	мы	вы	они
брать, <i>to take</i>	бер-	беру́	берёшь	берёт	берём	берёте	берут
ждать, <i>to wait</i>	жд-	жду	ждёшь	ждёт	ждём	ждёте	ждут
жить, <i>to live</i>	жив-	живу́	живёшь	живёт	живём	живёте	живут
идти,* <i>to walk, go on foot</i>	ид-	иду́	идёшь	идёт	идём	идёте	идут
класть, <i>to put</i>	клад-	кладу́	кладёшь	кладёт	кладём	кладёте	кладут

* Note that other verbs ending in **-ти** follow this pattern (e.g. *растí*, *to grow*).

- B** Some other irregular verbs work in almost the same way, but have **-ю** and **-ют** as their first person singular and third person plural endings:

Infin.	Stem	я	ты	он, онá, онó	мы	вы	они
литъ, <i>to pour</i>	ль-	лью	льёшь	льёт	льём	льёте	льют
петь, <i>to sing</i>	по-	пою	поёшь	поёт	поём	поёте	поют
пить, <i>to drink</i>	пь-	пью	пьёшь	пьёт	пьём	пьёте	пьют

61

Irregular present tense
(1) – Exercises

1 Make the present tense by choosing the appropriate ending from the box.

-у -ю -ёшь -ёт -ём -ёте -ут -ют

e.g. ждать/ты → ты ждёшь

- 1 брать/мы
- 2 жить/я
- 3 пить/вы
- 4 класть/они
- 5 идти/он
- 6 петь/ты
- 7 лить/я
- 8 ждать/они
- 9 пить/я
- 10 жить/мы

2 Insert the correct subject to match the verb.

- 1 _____ жду
- 2 _____ идёт
- 3 _____ поём
- 4 _____ живёшь
- 5 _____ пьют
- 6 _____ берёте
- 7 _____ кладёт

3 Look at the pictures of Ivan and Vadim and answer the question.

Кто поёт и кто пьёт?



4 Translate into Russian.

- 1 Ivan drinks vodka.
- 2 Olga lives in a flat.
- 3 He is waiting at the theatre.
- 4 We are taking the tickets.
- 5 They are singing this evening.

62^N_I Irregular present tense (2)

In this unit we look at some more irregular present tense verbs. Although they do not follow the patterns of the first and second conjugations, they do have recognisable patterns of their own.

A In this unit we will look at irregular verbs with the endings:

-у (ор -ю)	-ем
-ешь	-ете
-ет	-ут (ор -ют)

i.e. the я and онý forms both feature the letter у (or -ю) and all the other forms have the letter е.

B These endings are added to the *stem* of the verb. Each time you come across an irregular verb, it is important to learn the stem. Here are some common examples.

Infin.	Stem	я	ты	он, онá, онó	мы	вы	онý
éхать, <i>to go by transport, travel, drive</i>	éд-	éду	éдешь	éдет	éдем	éдете	éдут
искáть, <i>to look for</i>	ищ-	ищу	ищешь	ищет	ищем	ищете	ищут
мыть, <i>to wash</i>	мó-	мóю	мóешь	мóет	мóем	мóете	мóют
писáть, <i>to write</i>	пиш-	пишú	пишешь	пишет	пишем	пишете	пишут
плáкать, <i>to cry</i>	плач-	плачú	плачешь	плачет	плачем	плачете	плачут

B The verbs *to be able* and *to want* have a less regular pattern in the present tense, in the sense that their stem changes during the present tense:

мочь, <i>to be able (can)</i>	хотеть, <i>to want</i>
я могу	я хочу
ты мóжешь	ты хóчешь
он мóжет	он хóчет
мы мóжем	мы хотíм
вы мóжете	вы хотíте
онý мóгут	онý хотáт

69

Irregular present
tense (2) – Exercises

1 Complete the following sentences with the present tense of the appropriate verb. Use the English translations as a guide.

e.g. Он _____ отдыха́ть в Крымú → Он хо́чет отдыха́ть в Крымú. *He wants to have a holiday in the Crimea.*

- 1 Я ча́сто _____ моемú другу.
- 2 Сего́дня мы _____ в центр гóрода.
- 3 Он не _____ прийтí в теáтр.
- 4 Вы не очень ча́сто _____ посúду.
- 5 Почемú ты _____?
- 6 Онí _____ свой паспорта.
- 7 Турист не _____ смотрéть фильм.
- 8 Кому́ вы _____?
- 9 Вы _____ в музéй ёли в цирк?
- 10 Нет, спасибо, я не _____ кóфе.

- 1 *I often write to my friend.*
- 2 *Today we are travelling into the centre of town.*
- 3 *He can't come to the theatre.*
- 4 *You don't very often wash the dishes.*
- 5 *Why are you crying?*
- 6 *They are looking for their passports.*
- 7 *The tourist doesn't want to watch the film.*
- 8 *Who are you writing to?*
- 9 *Are you going to the museum or the circus?*
- 10 *No, thank you, I don't want any coffee.*

2 Choose the appropriate personal pronoun from the box to complete each sentence (you will need to use some of them more than once).

я	ты	он	мы	вы	онí
---	----	----	----	----	-----

- 1 _____ ющут гýда.
- 2 _____ не хо́чет рабóтать.
- 3 _____ почемú-то плачут.
- 4 _____ хо́чу читáть газéту.
- 5 _____ ёдешь в гóрод.
- 6 _____ ющет свой билéт.
- 7 _____ мо́ют посúду.
- 8 _____ мо́жете прийтí на концéрт.
- 9 _____ ёдем в Москвú.
- 10 _____ пýшешь письмо.

63 UNIT Verbs ending in -авать/-овать/ -евать; to be and to have

In this unit we look at irregular present tense verbs whose infinitive ends in -авать, -овать or -евать. We also find out how to say I am and I have in Russian.

A Дава́ть, the verb for *to give*, is an example of a present tense of verbs whose infinitive ends in -авать. Its present tense is formed like this:

я даю	<i>I give</i>	мы даём	<i>we give</i>
ты даёшь	<i>you give</i>	вы даёте	<i>you give</i>
он даёт	<i>he gives</i>	они дают	<i>they give</i>

NB the verb *to swim*, плáвать, has the present tense плáваю, плáваешь (i.e. like a first conjugation verb).

B Путешéствовать, the verb *to travel*, is an example of a verb whose infinitive ends in -овать, and танцевáть, the verb *to dance*, is an example of the -евать infinitive ending. The present tense of these verbs is:

я путешéSTRUю	<i>I travel</i>	я танцúЮ	<i>I dance</i>
ты путешéствуешь	<i>you travel</i>	ты танцúЕШЬ	<i>you dance</i>
он путешéствует	<i>he travels</i>	он танцует	<i>he dances</i>
мы путешéствуем	<i>we travel</i>	мы танцúЕМ	<i>we dance</i>
вы путешéствуете	<i>you travel</i>	вы танцуете	<i>you dance</i>
они путешéствуют	<i>they travel</i>	они танцуют	<i>they dance</i>

B Russian has an infinitive for the verb *to be* (быть), but there is no present tense. So, if you want to make a statement using the present tense of the verb *to be*, you need to use one of the following methods:

- use a dash if you are defining a noun: Аня – врач, *Anya is a doctor*.
- use nothing at all, other than the word (usually an adverb) you wish to state: Холодно, *it is cold*, интересно, *it is interesting*.
- use the word есть: В городе есть аптéка, *There is a chemist's in town*. Or, if you want to say *there isn't, there aren't*: в городе нет аптéки.
- use нет followed by the genitive case: Здесь нет киоска, *There's no kiosk here*.

F To say *has/have* use the preposition *y* with the genitive case of the “owner” and the nominative of the thing owned: У нас дом, *We have a house* (lit: *by us house*); у Ани собáка, *Anya has a dog* (lit: *by Anya dog*). Есть can be used to give added emphasis: В вас есть дом?, *Do you have a house?* To use this construction in the negative, use нет and the genitive of the thing owned: У нас нет дóма, *We haven't got a house*.

► For present tense of first conjugation verbs, see Unit 58, for genitive case, see Units 10–12.

63

Verbs ending in -авать/-овать/-евать;
to be and to have – Exercises**1 Put the infinitive into the correct form of the present tense.**

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 я/танцева́ть | <i>to dance</i> |
| 2 ты/да́ть | <i>to give</i> |
| 3 он/рекомендо́вать | <i>to recommend</i> |
| 4 мы/встава́ть | <i>to get up</i> |
| 5 вы/советова́ть | <i>to advise</i> |
| 6 он/ри́ковáть | <i>to risk</i> |
| 7 онá/узнава́ть | <i>to find out, recognise</i> |
| 8 я/испóльзовáть | <i>to use</i> |
| 9 мы/трéбовáть | <i>to demand, require</i> |
| 10 он/путешéствовáть | <i>to travel</i> |

2 Translate into Russian.

- 1 My brother is an engineer.
- 2 It is cold today.
- 3 There is a key on the table.
- 4 There aren't any shops in the village.

3 Explain who has got what.

e.g. Кáти/сын ✓ У Кáти есть сын.
 Ани /сын ✗ → У Ани нет сына.

Вадíм	дом	✓
Бори́с	автомобíль (м)	✗
Тáня	телевíзор	✓
Зóя	квартира	✓
Игорь	кóшка	✗
Сергéй	компью́тер	✗

4 Match the phrases.

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------|
| 1 У врача́ | а много́го книг |
| 2 У профéссора | б много́го ракéтов |
| 3 У библиотéкаря | с много́го пíсем |
| 4 У почтальóна | д много́го студéнтов |
| 5 У теннисíста | е много́го пациéнтов |

64 Nit | Reflexive verbs: present tense

Reflexive verbs express an action that reflects back to the subject. The infinitive ends in -ся or -сь.

- A A reflexive verb is the sort of verb which in English is followed by ... *self* or where ... *self* can be understood, for example *to wash (oneself)*. The ending -ся (or sometimes -сь) is what identifies a reflexive verb in the infinitive and these endings appear in the present tense as follows:

умы́вáться	<i>to wash oneself, get washed</i>
я умы́вáю́сь	мы умы́вáемся
ты умы́вáешься	вы умы́вáетесь
он умы́вáется	они умы́вáются

Some common examples of reflexive verbs where ... *self* is stated or implied are:

готóвиться	<i>to prepare oneself, get ready</i>
купáться	<i>to bathe, take a bath</i>
ложйтися спать	<i>to go to bed</i> (lit: <i>to lie down to sleep</i>)
одевáться	<i>to dress oneself, get dressed</i>
причёсываться	<i>to do one's hair</i>
раздевáться	<i>to get undressed, take one's coat off</i>

- B Some verbs which are reflexive in Russian would not state or even imply the word ... *self* in English; these reflexive verbs often involve the idea of 'to be...' and are *intransitive* verbs (i.e. they have no object). For example, the Russian verb *to be situated* is *находиться*: Наш дом находится в городе. *Our house is situated in the town*. Other common 'intransitive' reflexive verbs are *to begin* (i.e. *to be started*) and *to end* (i.e. *to be finished*).

to begin, start:

начинáться Фильм начинается в 9 часóв *the film starts at 9 o'clock*
to end, finish:

кончáться Фильм кончается в 11 часóв *the film ends at 11 o'clock*

- B Another group of reflexive verbs whose English versions would not state or imply ... *self* are concerned with feelings. Here are some common examples:

беспокóиться	<i>to worry, be anxious</i>
боя́ться	<i>to fear, be afraid</i>
гордítися	<i>to be proud</i>
надéяться	<i>to hope</i>
смеяться	<i>to laugh</i>
улыбáться	<i>to smile</i>

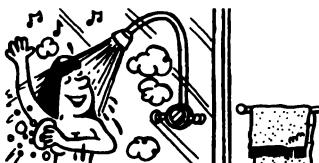
64

Reflexive verbs: present
tense – Exercises

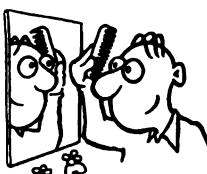
1 Fill in the missing words.

Она одевается в 7 часов

1 Я _____ в 8 часов.



2 Он _____.



2 Match the phrases on the left with their translations on the right.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1 Врач беспокоится о пациенте. | a <i>The concert starts at seven.</i> |
| 2 Концерт начинается в 7 часов. | b <i>At what time do you get washed?</i> |
| 3 Он всегда рано ложится спать. | c <i>The doctor is worried about the patient.</i> |
| 4 Я надеюсь, что всё будет хорошо. | d <i>He often bathes in the river.</i> |
| 5 Он часто купается в реке. | e <i>When does the film start?</i> |
| 6 Во сколько вы умывайтесь? | f <i>He always goes to bed early.</i> |
| 7 Архитектор гордится новым зданием. | g <i>What are you worried about?</i> |
| 8 Когда начинается фильм? | h <i>The architect is proud of the new building.</i> |
| 9 Мы много смеёмся. | i <i>We laugh a lot.</i> |
| 10 О чём ты беспокоишься? | j <i>I hope everything will be alright.</i> |

3 Translate into Russian.

- 1 I get dressed at 8 o'clock.
- 2 He gets washed at 7 o'clock.
- 3 They get undressed at 10 o'clock.
- 4 The concert ends at 10 o'clock.
- 5 You go to bed at 11 o'clock.

65^{UNIT} Aspects: imperfective and perfective infinitives

Most Russian verbs have two infinitives: imperfective aspect and perfective aspect. English has no equivalent of the Russian system of aspects. A small minority of verbs have only one infinitive, while verbs of motion (to run, to swim etc.) have three.

A When you look up a Russian verb in a dictionary you will usually be given two infinitives, for example писать/написать (to write). The first of these is called the *imperfective* and the second is the *perfective*. The imperfective infinitive is used to make:

- the present tense • the compound future • the imperfective past.

The *imperfective* is always associated with the process of an incomplete, unspecific, ongoing action or a frequently occurring action.

The perfective infinitive is used to make:

- the simple future • the perfective past tense.

The *perfective* is always associated with result, successful completion.

B Imperfective and perfective 'pairs' are usually related to each other in one of the following ways:

- писать/написать (to write) i.e. the perfective = imperfective + prefix (i.e. small addition to the front of the infinitive). Other common examples of this sort of pair are: видеть/увидеть (to see); читать/прочитать (to read); обедать/пообедать (to have lunch).
- решать/решить (to decide) i.e. the imperfective is 1st conjugation and the perfective is 2nd conjugation. Other common examples of this sort are: получать/получить (to receive); объяснять/объяснить (to explain).
- Sometimes there is a really striking difference between the two infinitives: говорить/сказать (to talk, speak, say); возвращаться/вернуться (to return); садиться/сесть (to sit down).

Unfortunately, there is no simple way of predicting what the perfective might be.

C Even when using the infinitive itself, we must be careful to select either the imperfective or the perfective according to the golden rule of: *imperfective = process/frequent/unspecific and perfective = result/completion*.

For example: Я умею писать, *I know how to write*. Here the imperfective for *to write* has been chosen because we are describing an ongoing situation, a habitual state of affairs. In contrast, Он обещал написать письмо директру сегодня (*He promised to write to the director today*) requires the perfective of *to write*, since it refers to a specific occasion.

D Certain verbs are always followed by an imperfective infinitive in Russian: кончать/кончить, *to finish*, начинать/начать, *to begin*, продолжать, *to continue*, переставать/перестать, *to cease, stop* (e.g. *He stopped playing*).

1 In the following sentences, which of the infinitives (to...) and verbs ending in -ing would be imperfective in Russian and which would be perfective?

- 1 *The guide continued speaking.*
- 2 *I want to write the letter to Boris tomorrow.*
- 3 *I prefer to read newspapers.*
- 4 *They stopped playing at 9 o'clock.*
- 5 *He decided to return on Tuesday.*

2 Now complete the translations of these sentences by filling in the appropriate infinitive in Russian.

- 1 Гид продолжал _____.
- 2 Я хочу _____ письмо Борису завтра.
- 3 Я предпочитаю _____ газеты.
- 4 Он перестали _____ в девять часов.
- 5 Он решил _____ во вторник.

3 Translate the following sentences and phrases into Russian; the imperfective/perfective pair of infinitives is given on the right.



- | | |
|---|------------------------|
| 1 He prefers to read newspapers. | читать/прочитать |
| 2 I want to send this letter today. | посылать/послать |
| 3 The actor starts speaking at 7. | говорить/сказать |
| 4 We continue watching television. | смотреть/посмотреть |
| 5 They like to relax on the beach. | отдыхать/отдохнуть |
| 6 I want to take the book now. | брать/взять |
| 7 We want to buy this dog. | покупать/купить |
| 8 Do you prefer to listen to the radio? | слушать/прослушать |
| 9 She likes to have lunch at 2. | обедать/пообедать |
| 10 Do you want to return today? | возвращаться/вернуться |

66 Future tense (1): compound future

The future tense is used to talk about what will or is going to happen. In Russian, the compound future is used to describe actions in the future which are incomplete, unspecific, repeated or continuing: e.g. I will write to you every day; tomorrow I will write a few letters and do some gardening.

- A The compound future, as its name suggests is made up of two parts, the future tense of the verb *to be* + an infinitive.
- B Although the verb *to be*, быть, has no present tense of its own, it does have a future:

я бўду	<i>I will be</i>	мы бўдем	<i>we will be</i>
ты бўдешь	<i>you will be</i>	вы бўдете	<i>you will be</i>
он бўдет	<i>he will be</i>	они бўдут	<i>they will be</i>

This can be used in its own right, as well as being part of the compound future, for example Зáвтра мы бўдем в Москвé, *Tomorrow we will be in Moscow*.

- B The second component of the compound future is the imperfective infinitive or aspect, because the compound future is associated with the process of an incomplete, unspecific, ongoing action or a frequently occurring action in the future:

Я будў писа́ть тебé кáждый день. *I will write to you every day.*
Here the compound future is describing a repeated action in the future.

Зáвтра мы бўдем смотрéть телевíзор и рабóтать в садý.
Tomorrow we will watch television and work in the garden.

Here the compound future is needed because the action described is not concerned with any result or completion and there is no specific time at which the events will happen.

- Г In Russian if the future is implied it must be used:

Когдá мы бўдем в Австрии, мы бўдем катáться на лыжах.
When we are (i.e. when we will be) *in Austria we will ski.*

Когдá я бўду в России, я ча́сто бўду посещáть теáтр.
When I am (i.e. will be) *in Russia I will visit the theatre often.*

► For simple future, see Unit 67, for imperfective and perfective aspects, see Units 65.

1 Underline the verbs in the following passage which would be in the compound future in Russian (hint: there are four).

On Saturday I fly to Saint Petersburg at 10am. While I am there I will have meetings with Russian representatives of the company, but I hope that I will also visit some museums and theatres. I promise that I will ring you as regularly as I can during my stay, or else I will use e-mail at the hotel.

2 Build sentences using the compound future, to give the meanings indicated on the right.

e.g. Я/дёлать/покупки на рынке → Я бўду дёлать покупки на рынке. *I will do the shopping at the market.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1 Он ча́сто/звонить/дрóгу. | <i>He will ring his friend often.</i> |
| 2 Бáбушка/отдыхáть/дóма. | <i>Granny will be resting at home.</i> |
| 3 Мы/играть/ в гольф кáждый день. | <i>We will play golf every day.</i> |
| 4 Зáвтра я/занимáться/урóками. | <i>I will be busy with lessons tomorrow.</i> |
| 5 В университéте он/изучáть/истóрию. | <i>At university he will study history.</i> |

3 Match the phrases on the left with those on the right, using the English translation as a guide.

- | | |
|-------------|---|
| 1 Зáвтра мы | a бўдете в России, вы бўдете звонить мне кáждый день? |
|-------------|---|

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| 2 Сегóдня вéчером ты | b бўдем игрáть в крýкет. |
| 3 В маé онí | c бўдут отдыхáть в Итáлии. |
| 4 Когдá вы | d бўду рабóтать в садý. |
| 5 Пóсле обéда я | e бўдешь писáть мнóго пíсем. |

- 1 *Tomorrow we will play cricket.*
- 2 *This evening you will write a lot of letters.*
- 3 *In May they will go on holiday (rest) in Italy.*
- 4 *When you are (will be) in Russia, will you ring me every day?*
- 5 *After lunch I will work in the garden.*

67 Future tense (2): simple future

The future tense is used to talk about what will or is going to happen. In Russian, the simple future is used to describe actions in the future which are single, specific, complete; they are concerned with result and successful completion (rather than process).

- A** The simple future is formed from the perfective infinitive. There are no new endings to learn, since it is formed in exactly the same way as the present tense, but from the perfective infinitive. So, for example, the difference between *I am doing* and *I will do*: я дёлаю (*I am doing*) is formed from the imperfective infinitive дёлать and я сдёлаю (*I will do*) is formed from the perfective infinitive сдёлать.

написа́ть	я напишу́	<i>I will write</i>
пообéдáть	ты пообéдаeшь	<i>you will have lunch</i>
объяснить	он объяснит	<i>he will explain</i>
получить	мы полу́чим	<i>we will receive</i>
решить	вы решите	<i>you will decide</i>

- B** Although the perfective infinitive for most verbs is formed by the addition of a prefix to the imperfective or a change to the second conjugation for the perfective, some common verbs have irregular verbs for their perfective:

Meaning	Imperfective infin.	Perfective infin.	Simple future
<i>to get up</i>	встáва́ть	встáть	я встáну, ты встáнешь, он встáнет, мы встáнем, вы встáнете, онí встáнут
<i>to give</i>	давáть	дать	я дам, ты да́шь, он да́ст, мы дадíм, вы дадíте, онí дадúт
<i>to lie down</i>	ложíться	лечь	я ля́гу, ты ля́жешь, он ля́жет, мы ля́жем, вы ля́жете, онí ля́гут
<i>to sit down</i>	садíться	сесть	я сáду, ты сáдешься, он сáдет, мы сáдем, вы сáдете, онí сáдут
<i>to say</i>	говори́ть	сказáть	я скажú, ты скáжешь, он скáжет, мы скáжем, вы скáжете, онí скáжут (NB other verbs ending in -казáти conjugate in the same way).
<i>to be able, can</i>	мо́чь	смо́чь	я смогú, ты смóжешь, он смóжет, мы смóжем, вы смóжете, онí смóгут

- B** If the future tense is implied, the future tense must be used:

Если он придёт вóвремя, мы сáдем в автóbus.

If it arrives on time, we will catch ('sit on') a bus.

67 Future tense (2): the simple future – Exercises

1 Underline the verbs in the following passage which would be in the simple future in Russian (hint: there are five).

I will ring you tomorrow at 10am, then I will write a letter to the director. As far as I know, he will be visiting lots of offices in England, but he has promised that he will visit our office on Tuesday. He will be considering all our proposals before his departure. Hopefully, he will sign the contract on Tuesday.

2 What will you achieve while your friend is watching television? Build sentences using the simple future:

e.g. Покá ты бўдешь смотрéть телевíзор ____ написáть письмо → я напишú письмо Борíсу. Whilst you're watching television I'll write the letter to Boris.

1 позвонить дрúгу	<i>I'll ring a friend.</i>
2 накормить собáку	<i>I'll feed the dog.</i>
3 пообéдат на кухнe	<i>I'll have lunch in the kitchen.</i>
4 купить молокó	<i>I'll buy some milk.</i>
5 выучить нóвые словá	<i>I'll learn some new words.</i>

3 Here is a page from your diary, with just the briefest of notes. Make up sentences to describe your plans for each day. Monday has been done for you:

ПОНЕДЕЛЬНИК	встрéтить Сáшу	<i>meet Sasha</i>
ВТОРНИК	купить подárки	<i>by presents</i>
СРЕДА	позвонить ма́мे	<i>ring Mother</i>
ЧЕТВЕРГ	написáть письмо бráту	<i>write letter to brother</i>
ПЯТНИЦА	выучить граммáтику	<i>learn grammar</i>
СУББОТА	отремонтировать машíну	<i>repair the car</i>
ВОСКРЕСЕНЬЕ	заказать билéты	<i>book tickets</i>

1 В понедéльник я встрéчу Сáшу.

68^{unit} Past tense (1): imperfective

The imperfective past is used to describe actions which were repeated, continuing or incomplete. It is made from the imperfective infinitive.

- A** The imperfective past tense would be needed in Russian to express repeated, incomplete, interrupted actions in the past, e.g.:

I always used to play squash on Saturdays; He was playing squash when he fell; We played squash yesterday; We played squash for two hours yesterday.

The final example includes the length of time the activity continued and when this is the case the imperfective will always be required. The imperfective past is also used when describing weather, colour, mood, appearance etc.: *It was cold when we were playing squash.*

- B** To form the imperfective past tense, remove the last two letters (ть) from the imperfective infinitive, then add the endings (reflexive endings on the right):

- if the subject of the verb is masculine singular add -л -лся
- if the subject of the verb is feminine singular add -ла -лась
- if the subject of the verb is neuter singular add -ло -лось
- if the subject is plural (any gender) add -ли -лись

In other words, the endings have to agree in number and gender in the singular with the subject of the verb. For вы, the past tense ending will always be -ли whether вы is being used to refer politely to one person or in the plural to apply to more than one person; for я and ты the ending will depend on the identity of the person (Игорь, ты завтракал? Катя, ты завтракала? *Igor/Katya, were you having breakfast?*)

играть → Вчера мы играли в сквош Yesterday we played squash.

одеваться → Он всегда одевалась
в шесть часов

They always used to get dressed at 6 o'clock.

- B** Irregular verbs form their past tense in the same way (e.g. жить → мы жили we lived), apart from verbs whose infinitive does not end in -ть:

везти (to take by transport) → вёз, везлá, везлó, везлý

вести (to take on foot, lead) → вёл, велá, велó, велý

есть (to eat) → ел, ела, ело, ели

идти (to go on foot, walk) → шёл, шла, шло, шли

мочь (to be able, can) → мог, моглá, моглó, моглý

нести (to carry) → нёс, неслá, неслó, неслý

- G** The verb *to be* (быть) exists only in the imperfective. This occurs very frequently in descriptions of weather, colour, mood, appearance etc.: e.g. Вчера он был в плохом настроении. *Yesterday he was in a bad mood.*

68 Past tense (1): imperfective – Exercises

1 Police enquiry: explain who was doing what when the telephone rang.

e.g. Когда зазвонил телефон/Вадим/спать → Вадим спал. When the telephone rang Vadim was sleeping.



- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1 Ольга/завтракать | Olga was having breakfast. |
| 2 Меня зовут Елена, я/мыть посуду | I (Elena) was washing up. |
| 3 Он/играть в карты | He was playing cards. |
| 4 Мы смотреть/телевизор | We were watching television. |
| 5 Вы/возвращаться в офис | You were returning to the office. |
| 6 Они/писать письма | They were writing letters. |
| 7 Борис и Светлана/гото́вить обед | Boris and Svetlana were preparing lunch. |

2 Underline the verbs in the passage below which would be in the imperfective in past tense in Russian (hint: there are 6).

When we used to live in a flat it was impossible to have a dog, but when we moved into a house with a garden, we bought one. He was a large black mongrel and he loved to play in the garden. One day he was barking by the gate when the postman arrived. He thought the dog was aggressive and refused to come in.

3 Explain why the verbs in the following sentences are in the imperfective past tense.

- 1 Вчера он работал в библиотеке два часа.
Yesterday he worked in the library for 2 hours.
- 2 Она играла в теннис, когда она увидела Бориса.
She was playing tennis when she saw Boris.
- 3 В марте мы были в Италии.
In March we were in Italy.
- 4 Они шли в центр, когда заметили автобус.
They were walking to the centre when they noticed the bus.
- 5 Вы всегда делали покупки в нашем магазине.
You always used to do your shopping in our shop.

69 UNIT Past tense (2): perfective

The perfective past is used to describe completed actions in the past; the emphasis is on result (not process).

- A** The perfective past tense would be needed in Russian to express ideas such as:

Вчера он купил автомобиль. Yesterday he bought a car.

Она позвонила Вадиму в десять часов. She rang Vadim at 10 o'clock

- B** The perfective past tense is very simple to form. Remove the last two letters (ть) from the imperfective infinitive. The endings are as follows (reflexive endings on the right):

- if the subject of the verb is masculine singular: add -л -лся
- if the subject of the verb is feminine singular: add -ла -лась
- if the subject of the verb is neuter singular: add -ло -лось
- if the subject is plural (any gender): add -ли -лись

In other words, the endings are rather like those of an adjective, in that they have to agree in number and gender in the singular with the subject of the verb. If the subject of the verb is вы, then the past tense ending will always be -ли whether вы is being used to refer politely to one person or in the plural to apply to more than one person; for я and ты the ending will depend on the identity of the person (Игорь, ты позавтракал? Катя, ты позавтракала? Igor/Katya, have you had breakfast?)

написать → Вчера вы написали важное Yesterday you wrote
письмо. an important letter.

сказать → «Да,» сказал он. 'Yes,' he said.

одеться → Сегодня они оделись в семь Today they got dressed
часов. at 7 o'clock.

- B** Irregular verbs form their perfective past tense in the same way; here are some examples of those whose infinitives do not end in -ть:

лечь (to lie down) → лёг, легла, леглó, леглý

съесть (to eat) → съел, съела, съело, съели

пойти (to go on foot, walk) → пошёл, пошла, пошлó, пошли

смочь (to be able, can) → смог, смогла, смоглó, смоглý

понести (to carry) → понёс, понесла, понеслó, понеслý

- C** Russian has no pluperfect tense (*I had written the letter*); the perfective past is used for all of the following: *I wrote, I have written, I had written*. The golden rule is that if the action was completed in the past, the perfective must be used:

Он пообедал в два часа. He had lunch at 2 o'clock.

Да, он уже пообедал. Yes, he has already had lunch.

Он уже пообедал, когда Вера He had already had lunch
вернулась. when Vera returned.

► For imperfective and perfective aspects, see Unit 65, for
imperfective past, see Unit 68.

1 What has already been done? Look at the rota below and explain who has done what. The first one has been done for you:

Ольга	пропылесосить	<i>to Hoover</i>	✓
Вадим	вымыть посуду	<i>to do the washing up</i>	✓
Вы	приготовить обед	<i>to prepare the lunch</i>	✓
Они	сделать покупки	<i>to do the shopping</i>	✓
Надя	накормить собаку	<i>to feed the dog</i>	✓
Игорь	выстирать бельё	<i>to do the washing</i>	✓

1 Хорошо! Ольга уже пропылесосила. *Good! Olga has already done the hoovering.*

2 Underline the verbs in the following passage which you would translate by the perfective past (hint: there are 10).

She had already finished the book when the phone rang. It was Boris, inviting her to the theatre. She refused politely, because she had already agreed to go to the cinema with Sergei. While she was speaking to Boris, her brother rang the doorbell. She hung up quickly and rushed to the door. Her brother was looking tired. 'I have brought the plants you asked for,' he said.

3 Igor and Zoya have had a lot of interruptions. Explain what they were doing by translating the following sentences into Russian. NB! Some of the past tenses will be imperfective and some perfective. The vocabulary you need is in brackets.

- 1 *Igor and Zoya were repairing the car when Boris rang.*
(ремонтировать/отремонтировать автомобиль
звонить/позвонить)
- 2 *Igor and Zoya were doing the washing when the washing machine broke down.*
(стирать/выстирать бельё стиральная машина
ломаться/сломаться)
- 3 *Igor and Zoya were planting trees in the garden when their son returned.*
(садить/посадить деревья в саду сын возвращаться/вернуться)
- 4 *Igor and Zoya were doing the shopping when Zoya lost the money.*
(делать/сделать покупки терять/потерять деньги)

70 UNIT Verbs of motion

Verbs of motion have two imperfectives and one perfective infinitive; this means that there are two ways of forming the present tense and the imperfective past tense.

A E.g. to go on foot, to walk:

A Imperfective (indefinite)	B Imperfective (definite)	C Perfective
ходить	идти	пойти

From column A we make:

- The present tense which deals with habits and generalisations: Емý два гóда и он ужé хóдит везdé, *He is already 2 and he walks everywhere.*
- The past tense which deals with habits, generalisations and return journeys. Он всегdá ходíл по гóрому по́сле обéда, *He always walked around town after lunch.* Он ужé ходíл в гóрот, *He has already been to town (i.e. there and back).*

From column B we make:

- The present tense which deals with actions in progress, that are happening now: Он идёт в квартиру, *He is walking into the flat.*
- The past tense which deals with an action in progress, in one direction: Он шёл в гóрот, когда он упал, *He was walking into town when he fell.*

From column C we make:

- The simple future: Зáвтра он пойдёт в гóрот, *Tomorrow he will walk into town.*
- The past tense which means a single completed action (in one direction): Он пошёл в гóрот в 4 часá, *He went (set off) for town at 4 o'clock.* (Note the use of пошёл in the context of weather: пошёл дождь, *it has started to rain*).

Here are the three infinitives of other verbs of motion which follow the same pattern:

	A	B	C
<i>to run</i>	бéгать	бежать (бегу́, бежíшь)	побежáть
<i>to take, lead (on foot)</i>	водить	вести (веду́, ведёшь)	повести
<i>to transport</i>	возить	везти (везу́, везёшь)	повезти
<i>to travel, drive, go by transport</i>	éздить (éзжу, éздишь)	éхать (éду, éдешь)	поéхать
<i>to fly</i>	летáть	летéть (лечу́, летíшь)	полетéть
<i>to carry</i>	носить	нести (несу́ несёшь)	понести
<i>to swim, sail</i>	плáвать	плыть (плыву́, плывёшь)	поплыть

70 Verbs of motion - Exercises

1 Practise using the Column A verbs in order to complete these sentences.

- 1 Он чáсто _____ за граñицу. *He often travelled (went) abroad.*
- 2 Кáждый день онá _____ в пárке. *Every day she runs in the park.*
- 3 Когдá он жил на берегú мóря, он _____ в мóре. *When he lived at the seaside he used to swim in the sea.*
- 4 Мы обýчно _____ из Хитрóу. *We usually fly from Heathrow.*
- 5 Онá ужé _____ дочь в шкóлу. *She has already taken her daughter to school (by car).*

2 Practise using the Column B verbs in order to complete these sentences.

- 1 Сегоðня он _____ за граñицу. *He is travelling (going) abroad today*
- 2 Кудá онá _____ тепéрь? *Where is she running to now?*
- 3 Он _____ к фíнишу. *He is swimming towards the finishing line*
- 4 Мы _____ из Хитрóу, когдá самолёт сломáлся. *We were flying out of Heathrow when the 'plane broke down.*
- 5 Онá _____ в шкóлу, когдá потеряла ключ. *She was taking her daughter to school (by car) when she lost her key.*

3 Practise using the Column C verbs in order to complete these sentences.

- 1 Зáвтра он _____ в Грéцию. *Tomorrow he will go to Greece,*
- 2 Я сейчáс _____ за врачóм *I will run for the doctor now.*
- 3 Он _____ до фíниша. *He will swim as far as the finishing line.*
- 4 Мы _____ в Москвú в 3 часá. *We flew to Moscow at 3 o'clock.*
- 5 Онá _____ дочь в шкóлу в 9 часóв. *She took her daughter to school (by car) at 9 o'clock.*

4 Choose the correct verb from the box to complete the sentences.

нёс понёс несёт

- 1 Почтальón _____ (*is carrying*) пíсьма на почту.
- 2 Почтальón ужé _____ (*has carried*) пíсьма на почту.
- 3 Почтальón _____ (*was carrying*) пíсьма на почту.

71 UNIT | Prefixed verbs of motion

Prefixed verbs of motion are a very useful group of verbs, indicating specific direction. They have only one imperfective and one perfective form.

- A** It is important to know i) the meaning of each prefix; ii) the imperfective and perfective infinitives to which these prefixes are added; iii) which preposition to use after the prefixed verb. For example: *to walk, to go on foot* makes its prefixed forms by adding to the infinitives -ходить/-йти:

Imperfective and perfective infinitives	Following preposition and case	Example
входить/войти, <i>to enter, walk/go in</i>	в/на + acc.	Можно войти в театр? <i>Is it possible to go into the theatre?</i>
выходить/выйти, <i>to go out of</i>	из/с + gen.	Он выходит из ресторана. <i>He is going out of the restaurant.</i>
доходить/дойти, <i>to go/walk as far as</i>	до + gen.	Они часто доходят до парка. <i>They often walk as far as the park.</i>
заходить/зайти, <i>to pop in, call in</i>	в + acc. (to a place) к + dat. (to see a person)	Я хочу зайти в аптеку теперь. <i>I want to pop into the chemist's now.</i>
отходить/отойти, <i>to move away from</i>	от + gen.	Он отошёл от двери. <i>He moved away from the door.</i>
переходить/ перейти, <i>to cross</i>	через + acc.	Мы перейдём через улицу здесь. <i>We'll cross the road here.</i>
подходить/подойти, <i>to approach</i>	к + dative	Я подхожу к окну. <i>I approach the window.</i>
приходить/прийті, <i>to arrive</i> NB perfective drops letter й – я приди	в/на + acc.	Он только что пришёл на лекцию. <i>He has only just arrived at the lecture.</i>
проходить/пройти, <i>to walk past, pass</i>	мимо + gen.	Кто проходит мимо окна? <i>Who is walking past the window?</i>
сходить/сойти, <i>to get off, down from</i>	с + gen.	Надо сойти с автобуса. <i>It is necessary to get off the bus.</i>
уходить/уйти, <i>to leave</i>	из/с + gen.	Он ушёл час назад. <i>He left an hour ago.</i>

- B** The same prefixes may be used by the following pairs:

-бегать/-бежать	<i>run</i>	-возить/-везти	<i>transport</i>
-водить/-вести	<i>lead</i>	-летать/-лететь	<i>fly</i>
-носить/-нести	<i>carry</i>	-плывать/-плыть	<i>swim, sail</i>

Note that -езжать/-éхать (*travel, drive*) is the only pair that starts with a vowel, and the only one for which any of the prefixes change in any way (под → подъ, с → съ).

1 Complete the passage with the appropriate prefixed verbs of motion. They are all in the present tense and are forms of -ходить/-йти or -езжать/-ехать.

Каждое утро я (1) _____ (go out of) из дома в восемь часов. Я (2) _____ (approach) к остановке автобуса. Когда автобус (3) _____ (arrives), я (4) _____ (get in). Когда я (5) _____ (arrive) в город, я (6) _____ (get off) и (7) _____ (walk past) мимо библиотеки и (8) _____ (go into) в офис.

2 Choose the appropriate preposition from the box to complete each sentence according to the sense of the English translations.

в	из	к	до	с	мимо	от	через	на
---	----	---	----	---	------	----	-------	----

- 1 Ольга вбежала комнату. *Olga ran into the room.*
- 2 Автобус подъезжает остановке. *The bus is approaching the stop.*
- 3 Борис доплыл финиша. *Boris swam as far as the finishing line.*
- 4 Туристы вышли музея. *The tourists went out of the museum.*
- 5 Максим придёт концерта завтра. *Maksim will (come to) arrive at the concert tomorrow.*
- 6 Бизнесмены вылетают Хитроу сегодня. *The businessmen are flying out of Heathrow today.*
- 7 Студенты проходят университета. *The students are walking past the university.*
- 8 Бабушка сошла автобуса. *Grandmother got off the bus.*
- 9 Актёр отошёл неё. *The actor moved away from her.*
- 10 Он всегда переходит улицу здесь. *He always crosses the road here.*

3 Translate into Russian.

- 1 *I am walking into the theatre.*
- 2 *He is carrying the books into the room.*
- 3 *We are running out of the park.*
- 4 *They are leading the dog across the street.*

72^NIT Conditions (1): open

An 'open' condition is one which still has a chance of occurring: If it is fine tomorrow we will go to the beach. If the condition refers to the future, Russian uses future tense in both parts of the sentence. If the condition refers to an ongoing situation in the present tense, the present is used in both parts: If you like the food, I am pleased.

- A** If the open condition refers to the future, the future tense must appear in both parts of the sentence; i.e. we must say:

If it will be fine tomorrow we will go to the beach.

Если завтра погода бу́дет хоро́шая, мы пойдём на пляж.

If you will get up on time, we will be able to catch the bus.

Если ты встáнешь вóвремя, мы смóжем сесть в автóбус.

- B** The future tense of *to be* is needed to give the future with words such as надо (*it is necessary*) and нельзя́ (*it is not possible, one may not*):

Зáвтра нельзя́ бу́дет смотрéть телевíзор.

It won't be possible to watch the television tomorrow.

- B** If the open condition refers to an ongoing situation in the present, then the present tense must appear in both parts of the sentence:

If you like the food, I am pleased.

Если вам нráвится ёда, я рад (ráда).

So, the golden rule is: don't try to mix the tenses. First check that the condition is 'open', then work out: *present tense throughout or future?*

► For closed conditions, see Unit 73, for formation of future,
see Units 66–67.

1 First some practice in making the future tense. Boris won't be allowed to go out tonight unless... complete the conditions imposed on him by using the future tense.

Борис смóжет пойтý на дискотéку, но тóлько éсли он... *Boris will be able to go to the disco tonight, but only if he...* убирáть/убрáть в дóме → уберёт в дóме (*will tidy tidies up in the house*).

- | | | |
|---|--------------------------------|---|
| 1 | пиcáть/напиcáть письмó дéдушке | <i>to write a letter to grandfather</i> |
| 2 | пылесосítъ/пропылесосítъ ковёр | <i>to hoover the carpet</i> |
| 3 | стирать/выстирать бельё | <i>to do the washing</i> |
| 4 | ráно вставáть/встать | <i>to get up early</i> |
| 5 | чиcтить/почиcтить машíну | <i>to wash the car</i> |

2 More practice with the future! Give ten variations on the beginning of a theme by translating the phrases into Russian; the imperfective/perfective verb pair is given for you on the right.

e.g. Я бўду рад (ráda), éсли он... *I will be glad if he...*

- | | | |
|----|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 | arrives on time | приезжáть/приéхать |
| 2 | doesn't forget his money | забывáть/забыть |
| 3 | rings the professor | звони́ть/позвони́ть |
| 4 | writes a letter to his brother | пиcáть/напиcáть |
| 5 | sells his motorbike | продавáть/продáть |
| 6 | gives me a present | давáть/дáть |
| 7 | books the tickets | закáзыváть/заказáть |
| 8 | buys a dog | покупáть/купíть |
| 9 | does the shopping | дéлать/ сдéлать |
| 10 | returns early | возвращáться/вернúться |

3 Tick the sentences where you would use the present tense in both parts and put a cross against the sentences where you use the future in both parts.

- 1 We are always glad if they send us a card.
- 2 They will not be pleased if you don't send them a card.
- 3 You are never satisfied if the food is cold.
- 4 If you don't ring me tonight I will be furious.

73 UNIT Conditions (2): closed

Russian uses **если** and the conditional tense to describe hypothetical or 'closed' conditions, e.g. If it were fine we would go to the beach today (or If it had been fine we would have gone to the beach today) – i.e. the implication is that it isn't (or wasn't) fine, so the trip to the beach isn't (or wasn't) possible.

- A** If a condition is no longer possible, or could never happen, or is just a general assumption (hypothesis), then the conditional is needed with **если**. The conditional tense is formed very simply: take the past tense of the verb (either imperfective or perfective, depending on the usual rules determining choice of aspect) and add the word **бы** twice: usually after **если** in the 'if' part of the sentence (the conditional clause) and then after the verb in the 'what would happen' part of the sentence (the main clause).

NB If there is **бы** in one half of the sentence, it must be matched by a second **бы** in the other half:

Если бы он знал правду, он очень рассердился бы.

If he knew the truth he would be very angry.

Alternatively, the *if* clause comes second:

Он очень рассердился бы, если бы он знал правду

The implication in this type of condition is that 'he doesn't, so he won't'. Note that the two parts of the sentence are separated by a comma.

- B** The good news is that there is no conditional perfect tense in Russian. *He would have been very angry if he had know the truth* would simply be, as above: Он очень рассердился бы, если бы он знал правду; i.e. the same form covers *would*, *would have*.

- B** Although the position of **бы** is usually as described in A, it can follow any word in the sentence which requires special emphasis:

Если бы она узнала об этом, она бы засмеялась.

If she had found out about this, she would have laughed.

- C** NB Conditions do not always include a **если** clause; sometimes they simply express a desire: Я очень хотéл(а) бы отдыхáть в Италии! *I would really like to have a holiday in Italy!*.

> For open conditions, see Unit 72, for imperfective and perfective aspects, see Unit 65, for formation of past tense, see Units 68 and 69.

1 Match up the two halves of each sentence. Hint: make sure the subject of the verb in one half is the same as the subject in the other (or that it matches the pronoun in the *y construction*).

e.g. у менé → я пошлá бы

- 1 Если бы у менé бы́ло врéмя, а если бы у них бы́ло врéмя.
- 2 Аня купíла бы дом, б я пошлá бы на óперу.
- 3 Онí плáвали бы в бассéйне, с если бы он говорíл по-японски.

4 Вадíм отдыхál бы в Японии, d мы пошли бы в теáтр.

5 Если бы у нас бы́ли билéты, е если бы у неё бы́ли дéньги.

2 Если бы бы́ли дéньги... What would they do if they had the money? Build sentences from the information given.

e.g. Тáня/путешéствовать за гранíцей → Если бы у неё бы́ли дéньги, Тáня путешéствовала бы за гранíцей. *If she had the money, Tanya would travel abroad.*

- 1 Онí/пострóить dáчу *to build a house in the country*
- 2 Мы/купíть подárki для друзéй *to buy presents for friends*
- 3 Пáвел/сидéть dóма *to stay (sit) at home*
- 4 Кáтя/купíть нóвую одéжду *to buy new clothes*
- 5 Вы/достáть билéты в Большóй Теáтр *to get tickets for the Bolshoi Theatre*

3 Если бы тóлько! If only! Complete the sentences by making a main clause from the information given.

e.g. Если бы тóлько он позвонíл я/передáть емý нóвости. → Если бы тóлько он позвонíл, я передáл(а) бы емý нóвости. *If only he had rung, I would have given him the news.*

- 1 Если бы тóлько мы не забыли, Аня не/рассердíться на нас. *If only we hadn't forgotten Anya would not be (would not have been) cross with us.*
- 2 Если бы тóлько онá знала об этом, онá/позвонíть емý. *If only she had know about this, she would have rung him.*
- 3 Если бы тóлько мы пришли вóвремя, мы/увíдеть их. *If only we had arrived on time, we would have seen them.*

4 Бýло бы лúчше, если бы... It would be better if... Complete the phrase using the information given.

e.g. мы/написáть письмо емý → Бýло бы лúчше, если бы мы написáли емý письмо. *It would be better if we wrote him a letter.*

- 1 онá/согласíться на это *to agree to this*
- 2 у него/быть телéфáкс *to have a fax machine*
- 3 я/знать его áдрес *to know his address*

74⁵ The imperative

The imperative or command form is used to tell people what to do, to make requests and suggestions.

- A The imperative can be made from either the present tense (imperfective) or the simple future (perfective). Commands made from the imperfective present refer to things that need to be done habitually and they tend to be more friendly than those made from the perfective future. Negative commands are usually made from the imperfective (but the perfective is used for warnings) and commands with a very specific element from the perfective. Here are some examples:

Do sit down and make yourself comfortable.

Make the imperative from:

imperfective

'Sit down at once!' said the police officer.

perfective

Always pay your bills on time!

imperfective

Don't open the door!

imperfective

- B If you want to give a command to someone you address as ты or вы, then for most verbs, first of all take the ты form of the present tense or simple future and remove the last three letters. If you're left with a vowel, add й (if you're commanding ты) or ите (if you're commanding вы); if you're left with a consonant add и (if you're commanding ты) or ите (if you're commanding вы).

Type of verb	Infinitive	Present: ты form	Command form (ты)	Command form (вы)
1st conjugation	играть	играешь	играй!, play!	играйте!, play!
2nd conjugation	смотреть	смотришь	смотри!, look!	смотрайте!, look!
Irregular present	писать	пишешь	пиши!, write!	пишите!, write!
Reflexive	садиться	садишься	садись!, sit down!	садитесь!, sit down!

- B Some common irregular imperatives: есть to eat → ешь! ешьте! пить to drink → пей! пейте! быть to be → будь! будьте! помочь to help → помогай! помогайте! вставать, to get up → вставай! вставайте!

Requests: in official requests the infinitive may be used. For example: Please do not disturb, Просьба не беспокоить (lit: request not to disturb); No smoking! Не курить!; *Suggestions:* Давай (давайтe) is used with the мы form of the verb to mean let's...: Давайте посмотрим телевизор, Let's watch television.

1 Match the Russian commands with their English versions.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 Подождите минуточку! | a Ring me tomorrow! |
| 2 Передайте мне воду! | b Let's go for a walk! |
| 3 Иди сюда! | c Pass me the water! |
| 4 Позвони мне завтра! | d Listen carefully! |
| 5 Сядись! | e Sign, please! |
| 6 Давай погуляем! | f Do sit down! |
| 7 Просьба не говорить! | g Go through to the sitting room! |
| 8 Проходите в гостиную! | h Wait a moment! |
| 9 Слушайте внимательно! | i Quiet, please (no talking)! |
| 10 Подпишите, пожалуйста! | j Come here! |

2 Make the ты form of the imperative from the infinitives.

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1 спать | <i>to sleep</i> |
| 2 написать | <i>to write</i> |
| 3 брать | <i>to take</i> |
| 4 купить | <i>to buy</i> |
| 5 поблагодарить | <i>to thank</i> |

3 Make the вы form of the imperative from the infinitives.

- | | |
|-------------|------------------|
| 1 забыть | <i>to forget</i> |
| 2 отдохнуть | <i>to rest</i> |
| 3 слушать | <i>to listen</i> |
| 4 работать | <i>to work</i> |
| 5 улыбаться | <i>to smile</i> |

4 Translate into Russian.

- 1 Don't forget the tickets. (warning)
- 2 No smoking!
- 3 Pass me the key, please.
- 4 Let's ring Tanya.

75 Nit Negatives (1)

If you want to explain what is not being done, happening etc., you need the negative. This is formed with **не** before the conjugated verb (i.e. verb in a tense).

- A** He should be placed immediately before the verb:

Он не работает.

He isn't working.

Мы не знаем, когда она придёт. *We don't know when she will arrive.*

- B** As the verb *to be* has no present tense, the word **нет** is used to mean *there is/are not*; this is always used with the genitive of the thing which is lacking:

У меня нет времени. *I have no time* (lit: by me there is not any time).

Его нет дома. *He is not at home* (lit: of him there is not at home).

- B** The following negative words must always include **не** and a conjugated verb; in English we can say, eg, *nowhere* or *not anywhere*, but Russian has only one way of making such negative phrases:

ничего не *nothing, not... anything*

никогда не *never, not ... ever*

нигде не *nowhere, not ... anywhere* (of position, location)

никуда не *nowhere, not... anywhere* (of direction, movement towards)

никто не *no one, not anyone*

Negative word	Example
ничего не	<i>Я ничего не понимаю.</i> <i>I don't understand anything.</i>
никогда не	<i>Я никогда не смотрю телевизор.</i> <i>I never watch television.</i>
нигде не (of position)	<i>Я нигде не вижу ключи.</i> <i>I can't see the keys anywhere.</i>
никуда не (of direction)	<i>Вы никуда не идёте сегодня?</i> <i>Aren't you going anywhere today?</i>
никто не	<i>Никто не понимает её.</i> <i>No one understands her.</i>

The negatives **ничего** and **никто** decline like **что** and **кто**. If they are used with a preposition, then the preposition must follow the **ни** part of the word:

Я никого не знаю. *I don't know anyone.*

Я ни о ком не думаю. *I'm not thinking about anyone.*

Я ничего не знаю. *I don't know anything.*

Я ни о чём не думаю. *I'm not thinking about anything.*

► For conjugation of **что** and **кто**, see Unit 51, for use of negative and infinitive, see Unit 76, for use of preposition or see Unit 89.



1 Build negative sentences using the following components.

e.g. Вíктор/не/лобйтъ/слу́шать мўзыку → Вíктор не лбйтъ слу́шать мўзыку. *Viktor doesn't like listening to music.*

- 1 Вíктор/никогдá не/петь пéсни *Viktor never sings songs.*
- 2 Вíктор/нигдé не/слу́шать поп-мўзыку *Viktor never listens to pop music anywhere.*
- 3 Вíктор /никтó не/слу́шать поп-мўзыку с *Viktor doesn't listen to pop music with anyone.*
- 4 Вíктор/ничегó не/знатъ о мўзыке *Viktor knows nothing about music.*

2 Complete the following conversation by giving a negative answer to each question, according to the prompts.

- e.g. Вы хотйтъ винó? *I never drink wine* → Я никогдá не пью винó.
- 1 Вы лбйтъ фйльмы? *I don't like watching films.*
 - 2 Здесь есть кинотеáтр? *There isn't a cinema here.*
 - 3 Чем вы занимáетесь в свободное врёмя? *I don't do anything (am not busy with anything) in my spare time.*
 - 4 Где вы лбйтъ отдыхáть? *I don't like to go on holiday (rest) anywhere.*

3 Match the following sentence halves to make full sentences.

- | | |
|--------------|---------------------|
| 1 Яничегó | a не дўмаешь |
| 2 Мыникогдá | b не понимаю |
| 3 Вынигдé | c не посещаэм тeáтр |
| 4 Онý никóму | d не отдыхáете |
| 5 Тыни о ком | e не пишут |

76 UNIT Negatives (2)

In Russian there are negative words which are used with infinitives, not with conjugated verbs (e.g. there is nothing for me to do). These negatives begin with the stressed syllable **нé**.

- A** The key negative words used with infinitives (with very literal translations into English) are:

нéгде	<i>not where</i>	Нéгде стóять	<i>There's nowhere to stand.</i>
нéкуда	<i>not to where</i>	Нéкуда идти	<i>There's nowhere to go.</i>

нéкто	<i>not who</i>	Нéкого спросить	<i>There's no one to ask.</i>
нéкогда	<i>not when</i>	Нéкогда отдыхать	<i>There's no time to rest.</i>
нéчто	<i>not what</i>	Нéчего есть	<i>There's nothing to eat.</i>

The negatives **нéчто** and **нéкто** decline like **что** and **кто**; if they are used with a preposition, then the preposition must follow the **нé** part of the word:

Нéчем писáть.	<i>There's nothing to write with.</i>
Нé на что жáловаться.	<i>There's nothing to complain about.</i>

- B** If you want to indicate who has nothing to eat, nowhere to rest etc., then you must use the dative case of that person:

Вам нé на что жáловаться.	<i>You've got nothing to complain about.</i>
Мне нéчем писáть.	<i>I've got nothing to write with.</i>

- B** These negative and infinitive phrases can be put into a past or future context by using the past and future tenses of **быть**:

Мне нéчем бýло писáть.	<i>I had nothing to write with.</i>
Вам нé на что бýдет жáловаться.	<i>You will have nothing to complain about.</i>

- G** Нéчего can be used to mean *there's no point*. Нé за что can be used to mean *don't mention it, you're welcome*.

► For conjugation of **что** and **кто**, see Unit 51, for use of negative and conjugated verbs, see Unit 75.

1 Match the Russian phrases with their English translations.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1 Нéкогда читáть. | a <i>Ivan has no one to talk to (with).</i> |
| 2 Ивáну нé с кем говорýть. | b <i>You will have nowhere to go.</i> |
| 3 Нам нéчего бýло пить. | c <i>Don't mention it.</i> |
| 4 Вам нéкуда бýдет идтý. | d <i>The children will have no one to play with.</i> |
| 5 Здесь нéчего читáть. | e <i>There is no time to read.</i> |
| 6 Тебé нé о чём беспокóиться. | f <i>There is no point worrying.</i> |
| 7 Нéкого спросíть. | g <i>There is nothing to read here.</i> |
| 8 Нéчего беспокóиться. | h <i>We had nothing to drink.</i> |
| 9 Нé за что. | i <i>There is no one to ask.</i> |
| 10 Дéтям нé с кем бýдет играть. | j <i>You have nothing to worry about.</i> |

2 Build sentences about the problems of Ivan and Maria.

e.g. Ивáн и Марíя/идтý в теáтр/нéкто/с → Ивáну и Марíи нé с кем идтý в теáтр. *Ivan and Maria have no one to go to the theatre with.*

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 Ивáн и Марíя/смотрéть телевíзор/ | <i>no time to watch television</i> |
| нéкогда | |
| 2 Ивáн и Марíя/писáть пíсьма/нéчто | <i>nothing to write letters with</i> |
| 3 Ивáн и Марíя/приглашáть | <i>no one to invite to lunch</i> |
| на обéд/нéкто | |
| 4 Ивáн и Марíя/пить/нéчто | <i>nothing to drink</i> |
| 5 Ивáн и Марíя/звонíть/нéкто | <i>no one to ring</i> |

3 Translate into Russian.

- 1 *You will have nothing to do.*
- 2 *Boris had no one to talk to.*
- 3 *There's nothing to eat.*
- 4 *The doctor had no time to rest.*
- 5 *We had nothing to read.*

77 | Possibility, impossibility, necessity and infinitive

The infinitive is used in phrases to mean it is possible, it is impossible, it is necessary and it is time to.

- A** The key words expressing possibility and permission, impossibility and prohibition, necessity are:

мόжно

it is possible, one may

нельзя

it is impossible, one may not

надо

it is necessary

пора

it is time to

These words are all followed by infinitives and are used with the dative of the person being advised of possibility, permission etc.:

Нельзя курить! *No smoking! (it is not possible to smoke)*

Здесь можно *Is it possible to take photographs here?*

фотографироваться?

Мне надо спать *I need to sleep (for me it is necessary to sleep)*

- B** In the case of нельзя the choice between imperfective or perfective infinitive affects the meaning:

- *Imperfective*: Вам нельзя выходить сегодня!, *You can't go out today!* (i.e. because you are ill, not allowed to).
- *Perfective*: Нельзя выйти. *You can't go out.* (i.e. it is not possible to go out, e.g. because someone has lost the key).

- C** Можна is a very useful term in both questions and statements and is often used on its own when you are trying to find out whether something is *possible* or *permitted*. For example, if you want to find out if a seat is free, you would say Можна? If it is in order for you to sit there, the person you have asked will reply Можна. (*May I sit here? Yes, you may.*)

Возможно means *it is possible* and is an alternative to можна only in the sense of possibility (not in the sense of permission).

- D** Нужно, like надо, refers to necessity:

Что надо делать? *What is it necessary to do?*

- E** Порá means *it is time to* and occurs in phrases such as:

Нам пора идти. *It's time for us to go.*

This is often abbreviated to Нам пора and sometimes just пора.

- F** Use the past and future tenses of быть to put expressions of possibility, permission etc. into past and future contexts:

Что надо будет делать? *What was it necessary to do?*

Мне надо было спать. *I needed to sleep.*

1 Choose the appropriate word from the box to give the required sense.

мόжно	нельзя	надо	пора
-------	--------	------	------

- 1 Нам _____ вернуться домой.
- 2 Спортсмену _____ курить.
- 3 Где _____ купить мороженое?
- 4 Почему нам _____ надо читать эту книгу?
- 5 К сожалению _____ позвонить отсюда.

- 1 *It's time for us to return home.*
- 2 *A sportsman shouldn't/mustn't smoke.*
- 3 *Where can one buy ice-cream?*
- 4 *Why must we read this book?*
- 5 *Unfortunately, it's not possible to ring from here.*

2 Match the piece of advice on the right with the problem on the left:

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 Таня не любит спорт. | a Ему надо купить аспирин. |
| 2 У Бориса болит голова. | b Ей надо купить новое. |
| 3 Её радио не работает. | c Ей нельзя купить билет на матч. |

3 Translate into Russian.



- 1 *He must rest in hospital.*
- 2 *It was time for us to go.*
- 3 *It will be possible to swim.*
- 4 *No, you can't watch television.*
- 5 *Yes, you must work.*

78 UNIT

Indirect statement and question

Indirect statements are reports of what people have said or asked: He said he was going to St Petersburg; He asked if I was going to Moscow.

- A** In English there is a change of the tense of verb between direct and indirect statement:

In direct speech	<i>'I am going to St Petersburg,' he said.</i>
In indirect speech	<i>He said he <u>was going</u> to St Petersburg.</i>
In direct speech	<i>'I will go to St Petersburg,' he said.</i>
In indirect speech	<i>He said he <u>would go</u> to St Petersburg.</i>
In direct speech	<i>'He has already gone to St Petersburg,' we said.</i>
In indirect speech	<i>We said that <u>he had already gone</u> to St Petersburg.</i>

In Russian the tense in the indirect statement remains the same as it was in the direct statement (although, as in English, there may be some change of the person of the verb):

Direct speech	«Я еду в Санкт-Петербург,» сказал он.
Indirect speech	Он сказал, что он едет в Санкт-Петербург.
Direct speech	«Я поеду в Санкт-Петербург,» сказал он.
Indirect speech	Он сказал, что он поедет в Санкт-Петербург.
Direct speech	«Он ужे поехал в Санкт-Петербург,» сказали мы.
Indirect speech	Мы сказали, что он ужে поехал в Санкт-Петербург.

Note that Russian always needs the word for *that* (*что*) in an indirect statement, preceded by a comma.

- B** In English we introduce an indirect question with the words *if* or *whether*
- Direct question *'Will you return?' we asked.*

Indirect question *We asked him whether he would return.*

In Russian, indirect questions must never start with the word *если* (*if*), but always with the word *ли* (*whether*). As for indirect statements, Russian keeps the tense of the direct question in the indirect version:

Direct question *«Вы вернётесь?» спросили мы.*

Indirect question *Мы спросили, вернётся ли он.*

Notice that the word order is usually:

Verb of asking + comma + verb + ли + subject, i.e. Мы спросили + , + вернётся + ли + он.

Я хочу знать, приедут ли они или нет. I want to know whether they are coming or not.

78^н_з Indirect statement and question – Exercises

1 Match the sentences with their translations.

- 1 Професор сказаў, что лекция начнётся в два часы.
- 2 Милиционер спросіл, куда мы ёдем.
- 3 Врач сказаў, что ему скоро буде лучше.
- 4 Гід хотэл знать, что турысты хотят посещать.
- 5 Офицыйант спросіл, хотят ли они суп.

- a *The policeman asked where we were going.*
- b *The guide wanted to know what the tourists wanted to visit.*
- c *The professor said that the lecture would begin at 2 o'clock.*
- d *The waiter asked whether they wanted soup.*
- e *The doctor said that he would soon be better.*

2 Report on the questions you asked during a conversation, using the English on the right as a guide.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1 Он/купить/билеты | <i>I asked if he had bought the tickets.</i> | → Я спросил(а), купил ли он билеты. |
| 2 Борис/приехать завтра | <i>I asked if Boris would arrive tomorrow.</i> | |
| 3 Ольга/заплатить за книги | <i>I asked if Olga had paid for the books.</i> | |
| 4 Клиенты/ожаловаться на товары | <i>I asked if the customers were complaining about the goods.</i> | |
| 5 Борис/позвонить директору | <i>I asked when Boris had rung the director.</i> | |
| 6 Ольга/вернуться | <i>I asked if Olga would return.</i> | |

3 Rewrite the jumbled sentences in the correct order. Use the English as a guide.

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | знаю ли я не приехал он | → Я не знаю, приехал ли он. <i>I don't know whether he's arrived.</i> |
| 2 | могло мы спросили в 8 часов позавтракать ли. | <i>We asked if it was possible to have breakfast at 8 o'clock.</i> |
| 3 | спросил пошёл дискотеку он друг ли на. | <i>He asked if his friend had gone to disco.</i> |
| 4 | когда он нам вернётся сказал. | <i>He told us when he would return.</i> |
| 5 | письмо ли она ты не получила знаешь. | <i>Do you know whether she's received the letter?</i> |
| 6 | я подпишет знать ли хочу контракт директор. | <i>I want to know if the director will sign the contract.</i> |

79^{Unit} Indirect commands, advice and wishes

An indirect command, advice or wish involves more than one subject and verb: Person A wants/commands Person B to do something: I want him to go home; They ordered him to go home. In Russian the word **чтобы**, followed by the past tense (either imperfective or perfective), is used in indirect commands/wishes (this is also known as the subjunctive).

A The imperative is used for direct commands:

Direct command *Go home!* Идите домой!

In the direct statement of a wish, the infinitive is used:

I want to go home Я хочу идти домой.

In an indirect command or wish, the subject of the first part of the sentence is not the same as the subject of the second part of the sentence (person A wants/commands person B to do something):

Indirect command Он/и приказали, чтобы он пошёл домой.
They ordered him to (that he should) go home

Indirect wish Я хочу, чтобы он пошёл домой
I want him (that he should) go home.

B Чтобы is *never* used with the present or future tenses, only the past.

C Чтобы is always preceded by a comma.

D Common verbs of commanding, wishing, advising which require the use of чтобы in indirect commands are:

говорить/сказать	<i>to say, tell</i>
желать/пожелать	<i>to wish</i>
предлагать/предложить	<i>to suggest</i>
приказывать/приказать	<i>to order</i>
рекомендовать/отрекомендовать	<i>to recommend</i>
советовать/посоветовать	<i>to advise</i>
требовать/потребовать	<i>to demand, require</i>

Some examples; notice how English sometimes needs *should* in order to get the sense of command/recommendation:

Милиционер сказал, чтобы они отошли от двери.

The policeman said that they should move away from the door.

Я предлагало, чтобы вы всегда вставали раньше.

I suggest that you (should) always get up earlier.

1 Build sentences to include indirect commands/wishes etc.

e.g. Он не/хотéть/она́/играть в тéнис → Он не хóчет, чтобы она́ играла в тéнис. *He doesn't want her to play tennis.*

1 Врач/трéбовать/спортсмén/не курить.

The doctor demands that the sportsman should not smoke.

2 Гид/рекомéндовать/турсты/обéдатъ в ресторáнах.

The guide recommends that the tourists should eat in restaurants.

3 Профéссор/трéбовать/студéнты/прочитáть всю книгу.

The professor demands that the students read the whole book.

4 Я/хотéть/мой сын/стать врачом.

I want my son to become a doctor.

5 Дéти/хотéть/родítтели/купить дорогие игрушки.

The children want their parents to buy expensive toys.

2 Form sentences from the following sentences, using the English as a guide.

1 Я хочу, чтобы он

a дал ему на чай.

2 Начáльник приказа́л, чтобы они́

b все зрители сели.

3 Вы хотите, чтобы я

c работал усерднее.

4 Он сказа́л, чтобы

d вышла из комнаты?

5 Официант хотéл, чтобы клиент

e приходили вовремя.

1 *I want him to work harder.*

2 *The boss ordered that they (should) arrive on time.*

3 *Do you want me to leave the room?*

4 *He said that all the audience should be seated.*

5 *The waiter wanted the customer to give him a tip. (lit: 'for tea')*

3 Translate into Russian.

1 *I want you to ring me tomorrow.*

2 *The doctor wants the patient to stay in bed.*

3 *The professor demands that the students work in the library.*

4 *The policeman suggests that you go home.*

5 *I ordered them to sit down.*

80 UNIT Purpose

A 'purpose clause' is part of a sentence which describes an action undertaken in order to achieve a certain outcome: I have come (in order) to tell you that dinner is served. In Russian the word чтобы is used with either the infinitive or a past tense verb in order to produce a purpose clause.

- A** If the subject of the verb is the same in both parts of the sentence, then чтобы is used with an infinitive. In the following example the person making the telephone call is the same person who is passing on the news about Tamara:

Я звоню тебе, чтобы передать новости о Тамаре.

I'm ringing you to pass on the news about Tamara.

In English this kind of purpose clause is expressed as (*in order*) to...



- B** Чтобы is usually omitted after verbs of motion:

Он пришёл передать ей хорошие новости.

He came to pass on the good news to her.

- B** If there is a change of subject, then чтобы must be used with the past tense (imperfective or perfective, depending on the usual criteria of choice: process or result?):

Я звоню тебе, чтобы ты понял правду.

I'm ringing you so that you should understand the truth.

In English this kind of purpose clause is expressed as *in order that/so that...*

1 Why do people want to do things? Build sentences with чтобы. Use the English translations as a guide.

e.g. Он/посеща́ть музéи/карти́ны/посмотрéть → Он хóчет посеща́ть музéи, чтобы посмотреть карти́ны. *He wants to visit the museums (in order) to look at the pictures.*

- 1 Мы/купить телевíзор/смотрéть матчи
- 2 Вы/ позвонить другу/пригласить его на концéрт
- 3 Ты/написáть письмо/передáть новостí
- 4 Онí/посетíть Москвú/вíдеть интересные места
- 5 Туристы/ посеща́ть пля́жи/отдыхáть

- 1 *We want to buy a television in order to watch the matches.*
- 2 *You want to ring (your) friend in order to invite him to the concert.*
- 3 *You want to write a letter in order to pass on the news.*
- 4 *They want to visit Moscow in order to see some interesting places.*
- 5 *The tourists want to visit the beaches in order to relax (rest).*

2 Boris has rung for a variety of reasons. Build sentences using чтобы and the past tense.

e.g. я/объяснить проблему → Борис позвонил, чтобы я объяснил проблему. *Boris rang so that I should explain the problem. (for me to explain the problem).*

- 1 онá/ответить на вопрос to answer the question
- 2 он/извиниться to apologise
- 3 мы/обсудить ситуацию to discuss the situation
- 4 вы/пригласить его на обед to invite him to lunch
- 5 онí/заказать билеты to book tickets

3 Choose the appropriate word or phrase from the box to complete each sentence:

чтобы позвонить	позвонить	чтобы _____	позвонил
-----------------	-----------	-------------	----------

- 1 Ольга вышла _____ другу.

Olga went out to ring a friend.

- 2 Ольга искала автомат _____ другу.

Olga was looking for a phone box in order to ring a friend.

- 3 Ольга хотела, _____ друг _____ ей.

Olga wanted (her) friend to ring her.

81 Unit Impersonal constructions

In an impersonal construction the verb is used in the third person singular without a definite subject, e.g. мне кажется, it seems to me that...

- A** Many impersonal constructions involve the third person singular of the verb and the dative case. Here are some common examples:

Мне кажется, что он прав. *It seems to me that he is right.*

Мне надоело работать. *I'm fed up of working.*

Нам удалось найти их дом. *We managed to find their house.*

Вам нравится танцевать? *Do you like dancing?*

Тебе хочется пить? *Do you feel like a drink? (=are you thirsty?)*

- B** Since быть (*to be*) does not exist in the present tense, many impersonal constructions consist only of the dative case and an adverb. Many expressions of *feeling* are made in this way:

Мне холодно. *I am cold/I feel cold. (lit: to me it is cold)*

Борису лучше. *Boris is/feels better. (lit: to Boris it is better)*

Как тебе не стыдно! *You should be ashamed of yourself!*
(lit: how to you is it not shameful?)

Нам было очень интересно. *We found its very interesting. (lit: to us it was very interesting)*

- C** The verb нравиться literally means *to please* and it can be used with a definite subject:

Мне нравится книга. *I like the book (lit: to me the book is pleasing)*

Им нравятся книги. *They like the books.*

Вам понравилась экскурсия? *Did you like the excursion? (lit: To you did the excursion please?)*

Notice that the object of the English sentence (*book*) is the subject of the Russian sentence (the thing that does the pleasing).

- D** The dative case is used with жаль (an impersonal predicate) to mean *sorry*:

Нам жаль бабушку. *We feel sorry for granny.*

Notice that the person you feel sorry for is in the *accusative case*.

1 Make sentences from the words in the box which correspond to the translations.

жалъ	мне	надоéло✓	нам✓	хóлодно	скúчно
им	хóчется	ей	удалóсь	емý	иráвится
тебé	пить	вам	собáку	найти́ ключ	плáвать

e.g. *We're fed up.* → Нам надоéло.

- 1 *They are bored.*
- 2 *I am cold.*
- 3 *She feels sorry for the dog.*
- 4 *He likes swimming.*
- 5 *Do you (sing.) feel thirsty?*
- 6 *Did you (pl.) manage to find the key?*

2 Who feels sorry for whom? Match the phrases on the left with the translations on the right

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 Мне жаль егó. | a <i>They feel sorry for me.</i> |
| 2 Нам жаль их. | b <i>I feel sorry for him.</i> |
| 3 Тебé жаль её. | c <i>You feel sorry for her.</i> |
| 4 Им жаль менý. | d <i>You feel sorry for us.</i> |
| 5 Вам жаль нас. | e <i>We feel sorry for them.</i> |

3 Build sentences explaining who likes what/whom, using the English as a guide.

e.g. Кáтя/нóвая пьéса → Кáте иráвится нóвая пьéса. *Katya likes the new play.*

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| 1 Он/актрíса | <i>He likes the actress.</i> |
| 2 Врач/больни́ца | <i>The doctor likes the hospital.</i> |
| 3 Профéссор/студéнты | <i>The professor likes the students.</i> |
| 4 Вы/экску́рсия | <i>You liked the excursion.</i> |
| 5 Я/онá | <i>I like her.</i> |

4 Some complaints! — Translate them into Russian.

- 1 *I'm fed up!*
- 2 *I'm hot!*
- 3 *I feel worse!*

82nd Conjunctions

Conjunctions are words which link phrases to make longer phrases or whole sentences (e.g. and, but, because).

А И means *and*. It is used to introduce extra information:

Я играю на кларнете и на флейте. *I play the clarinet and the flute.*
It is not preceded by a comma unless it links phrases with different subjects:
Мальчик плакал, и никто не слышал его.

The boy was crying and no-one heard him.

И... и means *both... and*: Он любит чай и кофе, *He likes both tea and coffee.*
A can be translated as *and* or *but*; it gives information which contrasts with other information given, but does not contradict it. It is preceded by a comma.

Я преподаю русский язык, а он преподает биологию.

I teach Russian language but/and he teaches biology.

Но means *but* when the ideas described are not compatible; it has a sense of *despite/however*. It is preceded by a comma.

Она не любит духи, но она дал ей духи.

She doesn't like perfume, but he gave her perfume.

Она обещала позвонить, но забыла. *She promised to ring, but she forgot.*
To say *or*, use или (no comma!); to say *either... or* use или... или (always a comma between the two parts of the sentence):

Вы хотите чай или кофе? *Do you want tea or coffee?*

Мы поедем или в Грецию, или в Италию. *We will either go to Greece or Italy.*

In negative contexts, use ни... ни (always a comma between the two parts of the sentence):

Он не пьёт ни виски, ни вино. *He drinks neither whisky nor wine.*

Б Что (*that*) is required much more frequently in Russian than in English. It must not be omitted in contexts involving *to say*, *to think*, *to believe* etc.:

Я думаю, что он в саду. *I think (that) he is in the garden*

NB что is always preceded by a comma.

В Потому что (*because*) is usually preceded by a comma (although you can move the comma to the middle of the phrase if you want to give special emphasis to the cause – *because of the fact that*). A comma always precedes так как (*since*) and appears in the middle of the phrase из-за того, что (*because*):

Он не придет сегодня, потому что (так как/ из-за того, что)
он болен. *He won't come today because he's ill.*

Г Time and place (когда, пока, где, куда) can also act as conjunctions (note the comma):

Я не знаю, где он живет. *I don't know where he lives.*

► **For use of чтобы (in order to/that), see Units 79 and 80, for use of если (if), see Units 72 and 73.**

1 Make sentences.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 Я пью | <i>both...and</i> | вино́, вóдку |
| 2 Я не играю | <i>neither...nor</i> | крайкет, футбо́л |
| 3 Я люблю операу | <i>and, but</i> | он, балéт |
| 4 Я не иду на концéрт | <i>because</i> | прогráмма, неинтéréсная |
| 5 Я не знаю | <i>where</i> | он, работает |

2 Insert commas as necessary.

- 1 Онá обещáла написа́ть письмо́ но онá забыла.
She promised to write a letter but she forgot.
- 2 Он изучáет матемáтику и фíзику.
He studies maths and physics.
- 3 Сергéй печáлен и никто́ не обращáет внимáния на него́.
Sergei is sad and no one is taking any notice of him.
- 4 Туристы сердítы потому́ что в гостинíце хóлодно.
The tourists are angry because the hotel is cold.
- 5 Дирéктор думает что клиéнт довóлен.
The director thinks that the customer is satisfied.

3 Complete the sentences with the appropriate conjunctions from the box.

когда́ где из-за того́, что и́ли ни... ни но а

- 1 Мáма врач, ____ пáпа программист.
- 2 Я передáм тебе́ письмо́, _____ ты приéдешь.
- 3 Что лúчше, газéта _____ журнáл?
- 4 Ситуáция серьёзная, _____ тра́нспорта нет.
- 5 Вы не знае́те, _____ можно купи́ть морóженое?
- 6 Он пригласи́л менé в ресторáн, _____ я не хочу́.
- 7 Дéти не хотáт ____ смотрéть телевíзор, ____ игрáть в саду́.

4 Translate into Russian.

- 1 *I'm glad because he's bought a ticket.*
- 2 *I want to go to the concert, but there aren't any tickets.*
- 3 *Do you want two tickets or three?*

83^{NIT} Prepositions: place and direction (1)

Prepositions tell us about the position of things. It is important to know which case is used after each preposition.

- A** The preposition **в** means *in* or *at* when it is followed by the prepositional case:

Где он? Он в бáнке
Официáнт работает в
ресторáне

*Where is he? He's at the bank.
The waiter works in the/at the
restaurant.*

- B** The preposition **в** means *into* or *to* when it is followed by the accusative case (i.e. when direction, rather than position, is important):

Кудá он идёт? В банк?
Официáнт вхóдит в ресторáн

Where's he going? To the bank?

The waiter is going into the restaurant.

- C** The preposition **на** means *on* or *at* when it is followed by the prepositional case:

Где ключí? На столé.
Онá на рабóте.

*Where are the keys? On the table.
She's at work.*

- D** The preposition **на** means *on* or *to* when it is followed by the accusative case (i.e. when direction, rather than position, is important):

Он положíл ключí на стол. Онá идёт на рабóту

He put the keys on to the table.

She is going to work.

The following words **cannot** be used with **в** if you are describing location or motion towards; instead you must use **на** (even when you want to say *in*, *into*):

вокзál	station	сéвер	north
востóк	east	спектáкль	show
завóд	factory	стадиóн	stadium
záпад	west	стáнция	station
концéрт	concert	úлица	street
лéкция	lecture	Урáл	Urals
пло́щадь	square	урóк	lesson
пóчта	post office	фáбрика	factory
рабóта	work	экzáмен	exam
рынок	market	юг	south

Вчera мы бýли на концéрте.

Yesterday we were at a concert.

Лóндóн на юге Áнглии.

London is in the south of England.

These nouns all combine with the preposition **с** (+ genitive case) if you want to say *from* (он с Урáла, *he is from the Urals*).

Note that the vowel **о** is sometimes added to the preposition **в** when it is followed by a word which starts with a cluster of consonants **во** *Фráncии* *in France*.

► For prepositional case, see Units 17 and 18, for accusative case, see Units 7–9.

1 Build sentences to explain where things are.

e.g. Ключи́/стол → Ключи́ на столе́. *The keys are on the table.*

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1 Дом/горо́д | <i>The house is in the town.</i> |
| 2 Церкви́/деревня | <i>The church is in the village.</i> |
| 3 Кни́га/шкаф | <i>The book is in the cupboard.</i> |
| 4 Автомоби́ль/улица | <i>The car is in the street.</i> |
| 5 Компью́тер/офи́с | <i>The computer is in the office.</i> |
| 6 Бристоль/запад Англии | <i>Bristol is in the south of England.</i> |
| 7 Поезд/стани́ция | <i>The train is at the station.</i> |
| 8 Тигр/зоопарк | <i>The tiger is in the zoo.</i> |
| 9 Почта́льон/по́чта | <i>The postman is at the post office.</i> |
| 10 Пиани́ст/концерт | <i>The pianist is at the concert.</i> |

2 Make sentences to explain who is going where.

Врач/больни́ца → Врач идёт в больни́цу. *The doctor is going to the hospital.*

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| 1 Секре́тарь/рабо́та | <i>The secretary is going to work.</i> |
| 2 Виктор/стадио́н | <i>Viktor is going to the stadium.</i> |
| 3 Учите́ль/шко́ла | <i>The teacher is going to the school.</i> |
| 4 Студе́нт/лекци́я | <i>The student is going to the lecture.</i> |
| 5 Собака/сад | <i>The dog is going into the garden.</i> |

3 Put the word in brackets into either the prepositional or the accusative, according to the sense.

- 1 Я рабо́таю в _____ (шко́ла).
- 2 Мы живём на _____ (север) Англии.
- 3 Он спешит на _____ (рабо́та).
- 4 Тури́ст на _____ (Кра́сная Пло́щадь).
- 5 Мы едем во _____ (Фра́нция).
- 6 Пассажи́ры идут на _____ (вокзál).
- 7 Вы отды́хáете в _____ (Крым).
- 8 Онí предпо́чти́т плавать в _____ (бассéйн).
- 9 Сего́дня онí лета́т в _____ (Москвá).
- 10 Собака спи́т в _____ (сад).

84^{NIT} Prepositions: place and direction (2)

Prepositions tell us about the position of things. It is important to know which case is used after each preposition.

- A** За means *behind* or *beyond*. It is used with the instrumental case to describe location:

За нашим домом большой *There's a big garden behind our house.*
сад.

За полем находится лес. *Beyond the field there's a forest.*

It is used with the accusative case to describe direction:

Вор спешит за дом. *The thief hurries behind the house.*

- B** Перед means *in front of* and it is used only with the instrumental case:

Автомобиль стоит перед *The car is standing in front of the house.*
домом.

- В** Между means *between* and it is only used with the instrumental case:

Актёр стоит между *The actor is standing between the
актрисой и продюсером.* actress and the producer.

- Г** Над means *above* and it is used only with the instrumental case:

Картина висит над *The picture is hanging above the
камином.*

- Д** Под means *under* and it is used with the instrumental if position is being described and accusative if motion is involved:

Кошка сидит под столом. *The cat is sitting under the table.*

Я кладу ведро под стол. *I put the bucket under the table.*

- Е** У means *by* and it is only used with the genitive case:

Вы стойте у двери. *You are standing by the door.*

Вчера мы были у бабушки. *Yesterday we were at granny's.* (at
granny's house; lit: by granny)

► For prepositional case, see Units 17 and 18, for accusative case,
see Units 7–9, for instrumental case, see Units 15 and 16, for use
of *y* in expressions for to have, see Unit 63.

84 Prepositions: place and direction (2) – Exercises

1 Choose the appropriate preposition from the box to complete each sentence. Use the English translation as a guide.

за междú над пéред под у

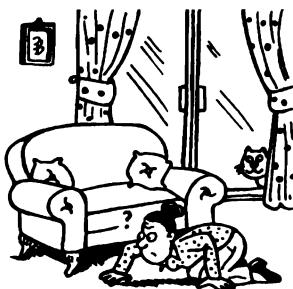
- 1 Шко́ла нахóдится _____ цéрквио и теáтром.
- 2 Вчера́ мы бы́ли _____ Вíктора.
- 3 Ключíй лежáт _____ газéтой.
- 4 Я подождú тебá _____ кинотеáтром.
- 5 Зéркало висíйт _____ столóм.
- 6 Туалéты нахóдятся _____ здаиñем.

- 1 *The school is situated between the church and the theatre.*
- 2 *Yesterday we were at Viktor's.*
- 3 *The keys are under the newspaper.*
- 4 *I will wait for you in front of the cinema*
- 5 *The mirror hangs above the table.*
- 6 *The toilets are behind the building.*

2 Olga's not sure where things are... Build sentences explaining where she should look:

e.g. Ольга/кóшка/дивáн/дверь.

→ Ольга дóмает, что кóшка под дивáном, но онá у дvéри. *Olga thinks the cat is under the sofa, but it is by the door.*



- 1 Ольга/рýчка/кни́га/
телефóн
Olga thinks the pen is under the books, but it is by the telephone.
- 2 Ольга/билéты/зéркало/
пáспорт
Olga thinks the tickets are behind the mirror, but they are under the passport.
- 3 Ольга/автомобíль/дом/
дом
Olga thinks the car is in front of the house, but it is behind it.
- 4 Ольга/портрéт/камíн/стол
Olga thinks the portrait is above the fireplace, but it is above the table.
- 5 Ольга/холодíльник/шкаф/
двéрь
Olga thinks the fridge is between the cupboards, but it is behind the door.

85 NIT Prepositions: place and direction (3)

Prepositions tell us about the position of things. It is important to know which case is used after each preposition.

- A** До means *as far as*. It is followed by the genitive case:

Идите до парка и вы *Walk as far as the park and you will see the church.*

- B** Из means *from* in the sense of *from out of* and it is followed by the genitive case:

Врач выходит из больницы. *The doctor comes out of the hospital.*
Борис из Москвы. *Boris is from Moscow.*

- C** К means *towards* or *to the house of* and it is always followed by the dative case:

Милиционер спешит к *The policeman hurries towards the hooligans.*
Сегодня мы идём к *Today we are going to some friends (to the house of friends/to see friends).*

- D** Мимо means *past* and it is always followed by the genitive case:

Студенты проходят мимо *The students are walking past the university.*

- E** От means *from* in the sense of *away from*:

Официант отошёл от стола. *The waiter moved away from the table.*
Она получила письмо от *She received a letter from her friend.*
друга.

- F** По means *along* (or *round*, as in the example) and it is followed by the dative case:

Мы идём по главной улице. *We are walking along the main street.*
Он любит ходить по *He likes to go round the shops.*
магазинам.

It is also found in expressions with *telephone, television, radio, post*:

говорить по телефону *to speak on the telephone*
передача по телевизору/ *a programme on the television/radio*
по радио
письмо идёт по почте *a letter comes through the post*

- G** Через means *across* (or *through*, as in the example) and it is followed by the accusative case:

Бабушка медленно *Granny walks slowly across the street.*
переходит через улицу.
Можно заказать билеты *You can order tickets through the guide.*
через гида.

► For accusative case, see Units 7–9, for dative case, see Units 13 and 14, for genitive case, see Units 10–12.

85 Prepositions: place and direction (3) – Exercises

1 Choose the appropriate preposition from the box to complete the sense. Use the English translations as a guide.

из к мýмо от по чéрез

- 1 Отойдите _____ дvéри!
- 2 Спортсмén бежít _____ фýнишу.
- 3 Туристы гуляют _____ ýлице.
- 4 Спортсмén бежít _____ зрителей.
- 5 Я дўмаю, что он _____ Кýева.
- 6 Автомобíль éдет _____ мост.

- 1 *Move away from the door!*
- 2 *The sportsman is running towards the finishing line.*
- 3 *The tourists are strolling along the streets.*
- 4 *The sportsman is running past the spectators.*
- 5 *I think he's from Kiev.*
- 6 *The car is driving over the bridge.*

2 Put the word in brackets into the appropriate case.

- 1 Здесь надо переходить чéрез _____ (ýлица).
- 2 Подходите к _____ (ка́сса), пожáуйста.
- 3 От _____ (кто) вы получíли письмо?
- 4 Джiovánni из _____ (Итáлия).
- 5 Проходите мýмо _____ (ка́сса) в теáтр.

3 Translate into Russian.

- 1 *She doesn't like walking round the shops.*
- 2 *The professor is hurrying towards the students.*
- 3 *The dog is crossing the street.*

86 Time – seconds to days

In expressions of time from a second to a day, в and the accusative are required in order to say at or on, but if you want to talk about days (e.g. on Mondays) по and the dative are needed.

- A** В and the accusative are used in expressions with *second, moment, minute, hour*:

В этот момент он понял, At that moment he realised that
что забыл свой паспорт. he had forgotten his passport.

Note that expressions such as *Just a moment!* are used without the preposition and with the accusative: Минуточку!, Hang on a minute/*Just a minute!*

- B** Days of the week are used with в and the accusative when they are singular:

в понедельник	on Monday
во вторник	on Tuesday
в среду	on Wednesday
в четверг	on Thursday
в пятницу	on Friday
в субботу	on Saturday
в воскресенье	on Sunday

Note also:

в этот день	on that day
в мой день рождения	on my birthday

- B** When days are used in the plural, по and the dative are needed:

по понедельникам	on Mondays
по вторникам	on Tuesdays
по средам	on Wednesdays
по четвергам	on Thursdays
по пятницам	on Fridays
по субботам	on Saturdays
по воскресеньям	on Sundays

86

Time – seconds to days – Exercises

1 Complete the sentences on the left and match them with those on the right.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 В _____ я играю в гольф. | a <i>On Wednesdays I do sport.</i> |
| 2 По _____ я работаю в офисе. | b <i>On Friday we are going to the cinema.</i> |
| 3 В _____ зазвонил телефон. | c <i>On Sundays I go to church.</i> |
| 4 В _____ мы идём в кинотеатр. | d <i>On Thursdays the guide rests at home.</i> |
| 5 По _____ я занимаюсь спортом. | e <i>On Monday I am playing golf.</i> |
| 6 По _____ я хожу в церковь. | f <i>On Friday we are going to Greece.</i> |
| 7 По _____ он плывет в бассейне. | g <i>On Tuesdays I work at the office.</i> |
| 8 По _____ гид отдыхает дома. | h <i>On Saturday you are going to St Petersburg.</i> |
| 9 В _____ мы поедем в Грецию. | i <i>On Thursdays he swims in the pool.</i> |
| 10 В _____ вы поедете в Санкт-Петербург. | j <i>At that moment the telephone rang.</i> |

2 Look at Olga's diary for the week and then answer the questions that follow.

ПОНЕДЕЛЬНИК	ПЯТНИЦА
Работа	Работа
ВТОРНИК	СУББОТА
Город	Работа
СРЕДА	ВОСКРЕСЕНЬЕ
Кинотеатр	К друзьям
ЧЕТВЕРГ	
Бассейн	

- 1 В какие дни Ольга работает?
- 2 В какой день Ольга идет в город?
- 3 В какой день Ольга идет к друзьям?

87 Time – weeks, months, years

English does not always use a preposition with time phrases (such as this week, next year), but Russian always does.

A Weeks are used with на and the prepositional case:

на этой недéле	<i>this week</i>
на прóшлой недéле	<i>last week</i>
на бýдущей недéле	<i>next week</i>
на слéдующей недéле	<i>the following week</i>

B Months are used with в and the prepositional:

в январé	<i>in January</i>	в июльe	<i>in July</i>
в февралé	<i>in February</i>	в áвгустe	<i>in August</i>
в мáрте	<i>in March</i>	в сентябрé	<i>in September</i>
в апрéле	<i>in April</i>	в октябрé	<i>in October</i>
в мае	<i>in May</i>	в ноябрé	<i>in November</i>
в июне	<i>in June</i>	в декабрé	<i>in December</i>

Note also:

в э́том ме́сяце	<i>this month</i>
в прóшлом ме́сяце	<i>last month</i>
в бýдущем ме́сяце	<i>next month</i>
в слéдующем ме́сяце	<i>the following month</i>

C Years are used with в and the prepositional:

в э́том годú	<i>this year</i>
в прóшлом годú	<i>last year</i>
в бýдущем годú	<i>next year</i>
в слéдующем годú	<i>the following year</i>

The same construction is also used for centuries:

в двадцáтом вéке	<i>in the twentieth century</i>
в двáдцать первом вéке	<i>in the twenty-first century</i>

87 Time – weeks, months, years – Exercises

1 Explain when you will see each other.

Мы увидимся/январь → Мы увидимся в январе. *We will see one another in January.*

- 1 Мы увидимся/этот год
- 2 Мы увидимся/эта неделя
- 3 Мы увидимся/март
- 4 Мы увидимся/июнь
- 5 Мы увидимся/будущий год
- 6 Мы увидимся/февраль
- 7 Мы увидимся/этот месяц
- 8 Мы увидимся/август
- 9 Мы увидимся/будущая неделя
- 10 Мы увидимся/21-й век

2 Explain in which month people's birthdays are.

День рождения/бабушка/2 → День рождения бабушки в феврале.

- 1 День рождения/Сергей/3
- 2 День рождения/Аня/4
- 3 День рождения/Татьяна/9
- 4 День рождения/сестра/12
- 5 День рождения/брать/1
- 6 День рождения/муж/10
- 7 День рождения/Катя/8
- 8 День рождения/Вадим/5
- 9 День рождения/Зоя/6
- 10 День рождения/Игорь/11

3 Translate into Russian (useful vocabulary on the right).



- 1 In December we like to ski.
- 2 In August we like to lie on the beach.
- 3 In February we like to stay at home.
- 4 In July we like to walk in the country.

кататься на лыжах
лежать на пляже
сидеть дома
гулять в деревне

88 UNIT Time – miscellaneous

This Unit covers the time prepositions during, until, over, after, since, in and ago.

- A** The phrase **во вре́мя** followed by the genitive case is the Russian way of saying *during*. (NB Note that **во вре́мя** is written as two separate words – unlike **вօврեմյա**, *on time*):

Во вре́мя концерта Ви́ктор Viktor was sound asleep during the
крепко спал.

- B** As well as meaning *as far as*, **до** also means *before* and *until*. It is followed by the genitive case:

Мы там бы́ли до семи́ часо́в. We were there before/until 7 o'clock.

- B** To explain the time **over** which something is done, use the preposition **за** with the accusative case (sometimes we would say *in* here, rather than *over*):

Она́ написа́ла кни́гу за 4 неде́ли. She wrote the book in 4 weeks.

- C** **Пóсле** means *after* and it is followed by the genitive case:

Пóсле обéда мы пойдём в гóрод. After lunch we will go into town.

- D** The preposition **с** indicates *since* or *from* a certain time. It is followed by the genitive case. Note that it is often used in expressions with the present tense to mean *has been*, *have been*:

Я рабóтаю с рáннего утrá. I have been working since early morning.

- E** As well as meaning *across*, **чéрез** means *in* of time in the sense of ‘*after an amount of time has elapsed*’. It is followed by the accusative case.

Пóезд отхóдит чéрез десять минúт. The train leaves in ten minutes.

- F** **Назáд** means *ago*. It is not followed by anything, since it comes at the end of the time phrase:

Они́ переéхали в но́вый дом They moved to their new house two
два ме́сяца назáд.

NB Remember that prepositions are for use with nouns, not verbs. To use a time preposition with a verb, introduce an extra phrase between the preposition and the verb, called a compound conjunction, e.g.:

Preposition + noun	Time preposition phrase + verb
До обéда мы лежáли на плáже. <i>Before lunch we lay on the beach.</i>	До тогó, как мы пошлý в ресторáн, мы лежáли на плáже. <i>Before we went to the restaurant we lay on the beach.</i>

1 Choose the appropriate preposition from the box to match the sense of the phrase (hint: you will need some of them more than once).

до после чéрез назáд с за во врéмя

1 _____ экску́сия тури́сты внимáтельно слúшиали.

2 _____ это врéмя, он никóго не вíдел.

3 Посáдка начнётся ____ час.

4 Фильм начался 15 минúт ____.

5 _____ лéкции мы пошлí в кафе.

6 ____ утра ____ вéчера.

7 Он прочитáл всю книгу ____ два дня.

1 *During the excursion the tourists listened attentively.*

2 *Over this time he saw no one.*

3 *Boarding will start in an hour.*

4 *The film began 15 minutes ago.*

5 *After the lecture we set off to the cafe.*

6 *From morning till evening.*

7 *He read the whole book in two days.*

2 Complete the sentences on the left and match them with those on the right.

1 _____ вы ушлí, мы поúжинали. a *He repaired the car in an hour.*

2 _____ обéда он ничегó не ел. b *They left two hours ago.*

3 Он отремонтировал машíну _____ час.

c *No smoking during the flight.*

4 Автóбус приéдет ____ 20 минúт. d *During lunch he ate nothing.*

5 Онí ушлí два часá ____.

e *Before the film started we had supper.*

6 _____ южина мы спáли.

f *The bus will arrive in 20 minutes.*

7 Я здесь ____ утра.

g *After you had left we had supper.*

8 Вы написáли письмо ____ час.

h *You wrote the letter in an hour.*

9 _____ полёта не курítъ!

i *Before supper we slept.*

10 _____ фильм начался, мы поúжинали.

j *I have been here since this morning.*

89 Nit Miscellaneous prepositions

This unit covers the prepositions without, except, about, according to, opposite/against and for.

A Без means *without* and is followed by the genitive case:

чай без сахара tea without sugar

B The preposition крóмē means *except(for)/apart from* and it is followed by the genitive case:

Крóмē Вíктора, все пришлí Except for Viktor everyone arrived on time.

C О means *about* in the sense of *concerning* and it is followed by the prepositional case:

Мы говорíли о погóде. We talked about the weather.

Note that those nouns which have the irregular prepositional ending in -ý (садý, in the garden) form their prepositional regularly with the preposition о: он говорíт о сáдe, he is talking about the garden.

D Г The preposition по is used with the dative case and means *according to*:

по статíстике according to the statistics

по-моему in my opinion (according to me)

E При is followed by the prepositional case and has several meanings: *by, near, attached to, in the presence of, during the reign of*. For example:

Он сказал это при мне. He said this in my presence.

При коммунизме. Under (ie during the time of) communism.

F Прóтив (sometimes напрóтив) is followed by the genitive case and means *opposite or against* (in the sense of *opposed to*):

Шкóла нахóдится прóтив The school is situated opposite the theatre.

Я не прóтив этого. I am not opposed to this.

G За is followed by the accusative case when it means *for* in the sense of *on behalf of, in support of, in response to*:

Спасибо за подáрок. Thank you for the present.

Я за это предложéние. I'm for this suggestion.

H Для means *for* in the sense of *meant for, intended for*:

Этот подáрок для вас This parcel is for you.

I На and the accusative means *for* in the sense of *to gain admission to an event and в and the accusative in the sense of gaining admission to a place*:

Я купíл(а) билéты на I bought tickets for the opera/theatre. оперу/в тéатр.

► For prepositional case (and irregulars), see Unit 17, for use of с and instrumental, see Unit 15.

1 Choose the appropriate preposition from the box to match the sense of the phrase.

без в для за кроме на о по при против

- 1 Он любит всех композиторов, _____ Бетховена.
- 2 Это книга _____ меня! Спасибо!
- 3 Он всегда пьёт кофе _____ молока.
- 4 _____ нашего дома красивый парк.
- 5 Вы уже купили билеты ____ музея?
- 6 _____ -мёму, это не правда
- 7 Мы долго говорили ____ погоде.
- 8 Он целовал её ____ всех.
- 9 Спасибо ____ деньги.
- 10 Где билеты ____ матч?

- 1 *He loves all composers except Beethoven.*
- 2 *Is this book for me? Thank you!*
- 3 *He always drinks coffee without milk.*
- 4 *Opposite our house there's a beautiful park.*
- 5 *Have you already bought the tickets to the museum?*
- 6 *In my opinion this is not true.*
- 7 *We talked for a long time about the weather.*
- 8 *He kissed her in front of (in the presence of) everyone.*
- 9 *Thank you for the money.*
- 10 *Where are the tickets for the match?*

2 The following sentences have been jumbled. Put the words in the correct order and match the sentences with their translations.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 мы за поблагодарили подарок её | a <i>They live in a house opposite the hospital.</i> |
| 2 дому они в напротив живут
больницы | b <i>Are you for or against this idea?</i> |
| 3 или за идея против этой вы | c <i>They went to the disco without me!</i> |
| 4 все Бориса довольны кроме | d <i>We thanked her for the present.</i> |
| 5 меня ходили дискотеку они на без | e <i>Apart from Boris everyone is content.</i> |

3 Translate into Russian.

- 1 *I have bought some perfume for her.*
- 2 *Thank you for the suggestion.*
- 3 *What did you talk about?*

90+ Verbs followed by prepositions

This unit summarises common verbs which must be followed by a preposition.

A The preposition в is used:

- After the verb *играть* to indicate which *game* or *sport* is being played; the *game* or *sport* must be put into the accusative case: *играть в гольф*, *to play golf*, *играть в карты*, *to play cards*.
- After the verb *смотреть* to indicate something looked through or into: *смотреть в окно*, *to look out of the window*, *смотреть в зеркало*, *to look into the mirror*.

B The preposition за and the accusative case is used with the following verbs:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| благодарить за (e.g. подарок) | <i>to thank for</i> (e.g. a present) |
| наказывать за (e.g. ошибку) | <i>to punish for</i> (e.g. a mistake) |
| платить за (e.g. покупки) | <i>to pay for</i> (e.g. the shopping) |
| продавать за (e.g. 50 рублей) | <i>to sell for</i> (e.g. 50 roubles) |

C The preposition к and the dative case is used with the following verbs:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| готовиться к (e.g. экзаменам) | <i>to prepare for</i> (e.g. exams) |
| относиться к (e.g. другим) | <i>to behave towards</i> (e.g. others) |

D The preposition на and the accusative case is used with the following verbs:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| жаловаться на (e.g. службу) | <i>to complain about</i> (e.g. the service) |
| надеяться на (e.g. лучшее) | <i>to hope for</i> (e.g. the best) |
| отвечать на (e.g. вопрос) | <i>to answer</i> (e.g. a question) |
| сердиться на (e.g. меня) | <i>to get cross with</i> (e.g. me) |
| смотреть на (e.g. карту) | <i>to look at</i> (e.g. the map) |

E The preposition на and the prepositional case is used to indicate which musical instrument is played:

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| играть на кларнете | <i>to play the clarinet</i> |
| играть на гитаре | <i>to play the guitar</i> |

F The preposition с is used with the genitive case in the phrase *to begin at* Давайте начнём с начала. *Let's begin at the beginning.*

G The preposition у (and the genitive case) is used after verbs of *taking*, *buying*, *stealing*, *requesting* to indicate the person from whom something is *taken*, *bought*, *stolen*, *requested*:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Он взял у меня 10 рублей. | <i>He took ten roubles from me.</i> |
| Мы купили у Ани бутылку молока. | <i>We bought a bottle of milk from Anya.</i> |

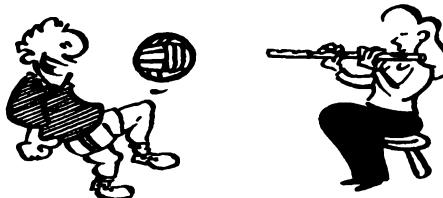
90 Verbs followed by prepositions – Exercises

1 Choose the appropriate preposition from the box to complete the sense, then match each sentence with its translation.

в за к на с у

- 1 Он играет ____ футбол.
 - 2 Мы купили машину ____ Бориса.
 - 3 Катя играет ____ флейте.
 - 4 Ты поблагодарил нас ____ приглашение.
 - 5 Мы начали ____ первой страницы.
 - 6 Врач очень хорошо относится ____ своим пациентам.
 - 7 Посмотрите ____ окно!
 - 8 Посмотрите ____ фотографа!
- a *Look out of the window!*
b *The doctor behaves very well towards his patients.*
c *He plays football.*
d *Look at the photographer!*
e *Katya plays the flute.*
f *We bought the car from Boris.*
g *We began at the first page.*
h *You thanked us for the invitation.*

2 Look at the drawings and make sentences with the verb **играть** to describe what they are doing.



- 1 Борис играет _____
- 2 Татьяна играет _____

3 Translate into Russian.

- 1 *We are cross with you.*
- 2 *We are hoping for the best.*
- 3 *He is answering my question.*
- 4 *It is not necessary to complain about the letter.*
- 5 *Pay for the books at the cash desk.*
- 6 *They are selling the chair for 200 roubles.*
- 7 *We are buying the chair from Anya.*
- 8 *Do you play the guitar?*
- 9 *Look at the dog!*
- 10 *We usually start at the first page.*

KEY TO EXERCISES

UNIT 1

1 1 е, 2 а, 3 б, 4 д, 5 с 2 1 у, 2 т, 3 ж, 4 н, 5 р 6 а, 7 ф, 8 к, 9 е 10 ѿ 3 1 11.30, 2 1 (OPT)

UNIT 2

1 актрыса 2 балерына 3 банкир 4 доктор 5 журналист 6 компьютер 7 менеджер 8 новый 9 пианист 10 программист 11 профессор 12 собака 13 студент 14 турист 15 хорошо 2 Ваня наконец спрашивает Машу (*never* ю *after* ш! *write* у *instead!*) «Где собаки» (*never* ы *after* к! *Write* и *instead!*) «Почему они молчат?» (*never* я *after* ч! *Write* а *instead!*) Маша не отвечает Ваня берёт свои книги (*never* ы *after* к! *Write* и *instead!*) и уходит к другу, Сашу (*never* ю *after* ш! *Write* у *instead!*). *Vanya finally asks Masha ‘Where are the dogs? Why are they silent?’ Masha does not reply. Vanya takes his books and goes off to his friend’s, Sasha.*

UNIT 3

1 1 ср, 2 м, 3 ж, 4 ж, 5 ж, 6 ср, 7 ср, 8 ж, 9 м, 10 м 2 1 компьютер (м) 2 радио (ср) 3 собака (ж) 4 дерево (ср) 5 автомобиль (м) 6 лампа (ж) 3 In list M the rogue is виза (ж), in list Ж the rogue is инженер (м), in list CP the rogue is энергия (ж)

UNIT 4

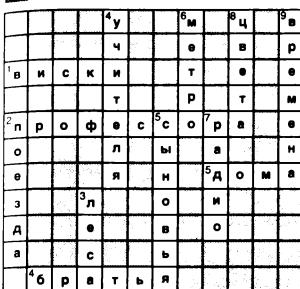
1 1 husband 2 Viktor 3 Olga 4 dog 5 student 2 1 собака 2 театр 3 концерт 4 книга 5 сын e.g. *Usually Vladimir holidays in Yalta.* 1 *The dog is playing in the garden.* 2 *The theatre is very beautiful.* 3 *When does the concert start?* 4 *Where is my book?* 5 *My son is a very good footballer.* 3 1 Лекция 2 место 3 Студент 4 Дедушка 5 Автомобиль 6 стадион

UNIT 5

1 1 газеты *Most of all Viktor likes to read newspapers* 2 марки *Stamps are expensive* 3 компьютеры *I don’t know where the computers are* 4 кинофильмы *Yes, I often watch films* 5 телесериалы *I don’t understand why he watches television serials* 2 1 балеринны 2 журналисты 3 собаки 4 самолёты 5 историин 6 свидания 7 инженёры 8 месяцы 9 бутылки 10 письма 3 1 женщины 2 мальчики 3 девушки 4 мужчины 5 кочки 6 лошади 7 моря 8 декларации 9 здания 10 героя 4 1 с, 2 а, 3 б

UNIT 6

1 1 братья 2 имена 3 дети 4 матери 5 адреса 6 глаза 7 деревья 8 друзья 9 люби 10 города

2 Кроссворд**UNIT 7**

- 1** 1 television 2 water 3 cat 4 Kremlin 5 watch **2** 1 д 4, 2 а 1, 3 е 5, 4 б 2, 5 с 3 **3**
 1 дочь 2 бабушку 3 мать 4 дядю 5 тётя 6 стол 7 поле 8 октрыйку 9
 лошадь 10 брата

UNIT 8

- 1** 1 Underline boats, circle: seagulls 2 underline tickets 3 underline purchases circle
 customers 4 underline books newspapers 5 circle dogs **2** 1 телефоны 2 здания 3
 бутылки 4 поля 5 марки **3** 1 инженеров 2 медсестёр 3 футболистов 4
 балерин 5 врачей **4** 1 коров 2 музыкантов 3 лодки 4 магазины 5 птиц

UNIT 9

- 1** Что вы любите больше, 1 деревья/берега 2 поезды/тракторы 3
 стулья/цветы 4 дома/города **2** 1 в 4, 2 е 3, 3 а 5, 4 д 1, 5 с 2 **3** ✓ города,
 дома, людей и номера ✗ поезды и вечеря

UNIT 10

- 1** 1 cheese 2 ham 3 Italy 4 tourist 5 Igor, paper **2** 2 Это собака Бориса 3 Это
 автомобиль Андрея 4 Это телефон Анны 5 Это радио Игоря **3** 1 вина 2 сыра
 3 икры 4 чая 5 водки **4** 1 ветчины 2 пива 3 хлеба 4 говядины 5 шоколада

UNIT 11

- 1 мальчиков 2 студентов 3 книг 4 писем 5 помидоров **2** 1 часов 2 рек
 3 музеев 4 танцоров 5 дверей 6 морей 7 гостиниц 8 наций 9 героев 10
 строителей **3** 1 апельсинов 2 конфет 3 спичек 4 сигарет 5 бананов **4** 1
 много станций 2 букет роз 3 нет марок 4 группа врачей 5 пачка документов

UNIT 12

- 1** 1 братьев 2 деревьев 3 детей 4 звёзд 5 городов 6 англичан 7 сыновей 8
 дочерей 9 граждан 10 листьев **2** 1 стульев 2 апельсинов 3 открыток 4
 блузок 5 конвертов 6 ручек 7 сувениров 8 домов 9 яблок 10 писем
3 1 лист 2 мать 3 гостиница 4 англичанин 5 фотография 6 ухо 7 булка
 8 автомобиль 9 время 10 человёк

UNIT 13

- 1** другу Виктору тёте дяде племяннику **2** 1 Он дал книгу Светлане 2 Дочь
 дала духи матери 3 Он дал цветы медсестре 4 Анядала мотоцикл Андрею **183**

5 Онá далá пис्यомо дирéктору **3** 1 врачу 2 журналиstu 3 Йгорю 4 пóлю 5 улице 6 Италии 7 Зое 8 кúхне 9 писáтелью 10 свекрóви **4** мáтери Татьяне брату Константи́ну дру́гу Антóну

UNIT 14

1 1 Кассирша даёт сдачу клиéнтам 2 Ученикй даёт книги учительям 3 Медсестра даёт лекáство пациéнтом 4 Гид даёт билéты англичáнам 5 Он даёт подáрки друзьям **2** 1 трамвáям 2 дерéвьям 3 картíнам 4 худóжникам 5 сыновьям 6 почтальонам 7 преподавáтелям 8 здáниям 9 лошадям 10 официáнкам **3** 1 e 3, 2 a 1, 3 d 5, 4 c 4, 5 b 2

UNIT 15

1 In the evening I am going by train with Elena to Viktor's. Viktor works in Novgorod, as an architect. Viktor's interested in sport. In summer he plays tennis with Sasha twice a week, when it's fine. **2** Вечером я ёду поездом с Еленой к Виктору. Виктор работает в Новгороде, архитéктом. Виктор интересуется спортом. Летом он играет в тénnis с Сашей два раза в недéлю. **3** 1 хлéбом 2 салáтом 3 картошкой 4 молоком 5 лимоном 6 печéнем **4** 1 Йгорем 2 профессором 3 Марией 4 другом 5 Катей

UNIT 16

1 1 аптéками 2 здáниями 3 предметами 4 писáтелями 5 открытиями 6 дерéвьями 7 друзьями 8 экску́сиями 9 дочерьмí 10 компьóтерами **2** 1 Ирина интересуется симфонíями 2 Валентин интересуется фíльмами 3 Архитéктор интересуется óкнами 4 Гитарист интересуется гитáрами 5 Студéнт интересуется писáтелями **3** 1 суп с помидóрами 2 салáт с огурцáми (fleeting vowel! see Unit 5) 3 торт с орéхами 4 мороженое с фруктами

UNIT 17

1 1 Врач работает в больнице 2 Архитéктор работает в здáнии 3 Моряк работает на мóре 4 Официáнт работает в ресторáне 5 Садóвник работает в саду. **2** 1 Самолёт в аэропортú 2 Вíза в паспорте 3 Шуба в шкафу 4 Компьóтер на столе 5 Мадрид в Испáнии **3** 1 ме́сте 2 бассéйне 3 автомобíле 4 лаборатóрии 5 льдú 6 музéе 7 трамвáе 8 почте 9 кúхне 10 пóле **4** 1 c, 2 a, 3 e, 4 b, 5 d

UNIT 18

1 1 дерéвнях 2 городáх 3 цéнтрах 4 стрáнах 5 местáх 6 парфюмéриях 7 портфéлях 8 полáх 9 номерáх 10 стульях **2** 1 Продавцы работают в магазíнах 2 Студéнты учатся в университéтах 3 Фéрмеры работают на фéрмах 4 Хýмики работают в лаборатóриях 5 Учителя работают в школах **3** Туристы живут в гостиницах и в кэмпингах. Они проводят некотóрое врéмя в музéях, в галерéях, в собóрах и к концу дня, в универмáгах. Они тóже проводят некотóрое врéмя в клúбах, в сáунах и в ресторáнах.

UNIT 19

1 1 d 3, 2 a 5, 3 e 4, 4 c 2, 5 b 1 **2** 1 Genitive plural 2 a врач в актёр с профессор d компьóтер d учитель **3** 1 Борис знает брата (animate!) Ивáна. 2 Вы хотите смотреть телевíзор? 3 Онá купила стулья 4 Виктор увидел друзéй

(animate!) в театре 5 Мы заказали курицу с рисом. 4 1 Серге́й любит дёрево.
 2 Мы живём в городе 3 Ольга далá Вадиму картину 4 Я знаю студéнтов 5 Я
 люблю ёздить поездом с друзьями 6 Он смотрит фильм с братом 7 Анна
 работает медсестрой в больнице.

UNIT 20

1 1 высокая стройная женщина 2 маленький толстый мужчина 2 1c, 2a, 3d, 4e,
 5b **3** 1 красивая школа 2 жёлтое окно 3 свежее молоко 4 хороший
 журналист 5 доброе утро

UNIT 21

1 1 утrenнюю 2 нижнюю 3 синяя, лётная 4 соседний 5 завтрашняя **2** 1
 плохая 2 последняя 3 новоднне 4 молодое 5 карие 6 большое **3** 1e 2a
 3d 4c 5b **4** 1 молодая актриса 2 другие театры 3 лётная программа 4
 плохое утро 5 последняя проблема

UNIT 22

1 1 наши 2 ваши 3 Его 4 твой 5 Их 6 Мой 7 Твой 8 её, их 9 Наш **2** 1c
 2d 3b 4a 5e **3** 1 ваш 2 мой 3 ваш 4 мой, мой **4** 1 мой 2 наши 3 ваш
 4 твой 5 их

UNIT 23

1 Last year we set off on holiday in our car. Unfortunately Ivan lost his passport before we
 reached our destination. My brother, Nikolai, tried to help him find it. Nikolai is a very
 impatient person and soon lost his patience with Ivan. While they were arguing, I looked in his
 suitcase and found that his passport was right at the bottom. How I love my brothers! **2** 1
 Её 2 свой 3 Мой, свой 4 Наша, свой 5 Их, своё **4** 1 Их дом в городе 2
 Они любят свой дом 3 Мы любим ваш дом 4 Их мать любит наш дом 5 Дом
 Ивáна? Я люблю его дом!

UNIT 24

1 Вчера мы были в городе. В ресторане мы видели нашего друга, Ивáна. Он
 уже сделал свой покупки. Он показал нам свой новый свитер, дорогие джинсы и
 шикарный пиджак **2** 1 большую собачку 2 новый диван 3 пушистого
 кролика 4 деревянный стол 5 новое окно 6 вкусный торт 7 шикарную юбку
 8 интересную книгу 9 купальний костюм 10 синюю брошку **3** 1 мою сестру
 2 молодого профессора 3 древнего писателя 4 интересную актрису 5
 скучного журналиста

UNIT 25

1 1 своих 2 красивые 3 молодых 4 исторические 5 новых **2** 1
 больших собак 2 красивых лошадей 3 зелёные дёревья 4 древние дома 5
 страанных птиц 6 своих братьев 7 молодых кошек 8 маленькие квартиры 9
 иностранные города 10 известных писателей **3** 1 маленьких собак 2
 хорошие костюмы 3 ваши книги 4 новые окна 5 интересные кассеты

UNIT 26

1 Наша школа находится недалеко от красивого парка. Налево от нашей
 школы есть большая аптека, где работает мать моего друга, Ивáна. Друг моей
 сестры тоже работает в этой большой аптеке **2** 1 мало/русской водки

2 мнóго/францúзского винá 3 мáло/китáйского рýса 4 мнóго/вкýсного салáта
5 мáло/свéжей колбасы **3** 2 Э́то собáка высóкой стройной жéнчины 3 Э́то
кошка мáленького тóлстого мужчýны

UNIT 27

- 1** 1 Налéво от ýтрених газéт 2 Напráво от наšíх велосипéдов 3 Напráво от
дорогих юбок 4 Налéво от деревéйных стульев 5 Налéво от огрóмных здáний
2 1 грúппа итальянских тури́стов 2 грúппа извéстных врачéй 3 грúппа нóвых
студéнтов 4 грúппа пожилых людéй 5 грúппа серьёзных истóриков **3** 1c 2a
3d 4h 5b 6g 7e 8f
-

UNIT 28

- 1** 1 рýсскуму студéнту 2 больно́й старúшке 3 прéжнему мéнеджеру 4
нашей мáтери 5 молодóму пианисту **2** 1 Татьяна идёт к красíвой карти́не
2 Йгорь идёт к дрéвней вáзе 3 Вадим идёт к большому мосту́ 4 Аня идёт к
сосéднему дому 5 Пáвел идёт к нóвой лабóратории **3** 2 Жéнщина даёт
конфéту большо́й собáке 3 Мужчíна даёт рýбу мáленькой кошке
-

UNIT 29

- 1** 1b 2d 3e 4a 5c **2** 1 твоím дочерям 2 наšíм учителáм 3 молодóм
собáкам 4 прéжним директóрам 5 рýсским студéнтом **3** 1 Официант
подхóдит к большíм столам 2 Архитéктор подхóдит к мáленьким óкнам 3
Татьяна подхóдит к нóвым óфисам 4 Кáтя подхóдит к своим дéтям 5 Ивáн
подхóдит к стáрым друзьям
-

UNIT 30

- 1** 1 Я éду рáнним побéздом 2 Я пишú дешёвой рúчкой 3 Нáдо мыть посúду
горячей водой. 4 Я открыváю дверь моím ключом 5 Он глáдит рубáшку
нóвым утюгом **2** 1 Врач хóчет пойти в теáтр с красíвой медсестрой 2 Ивáн
хóчет пойти в теáтр с английским тури́стом 3 Журнали́ст хóчет пойти в теáтр с
извéстным политíком 4 Евгéний хóчет пойти в теáтр с моéй сестрой 5 Муж
хóчет пойти в теáтр с молодóй женой **3** 1 свéжей ветчиной 2 копчёной
рýбой 3 зелёным огурцом (fleeting vowel, see Unit 5) 4 дорогíм майонéзом **4**
1 Кофе с холóдным молоком 2 Чай со свéжим лимоном
-

UNIT 31

- 1** 1d 2c 3a 4b **2** 1 нóвыми друзьями 2 францúзскими гостями 3 вáжными
клиéнтами 4 молодóмыми детьми 5 рýсскими студéнтами 6 стáрыми
пенсионéрами 7 наšíми брáтьями **3** 1 интересными книгами 2 больными
пациéнтами 3 нóвыми студéнтами 4 хорошими газéтами 5 рýсскими
компýтерами
-

UNIT 32

- 1** 1 стáром 2 дрéвней 3 шýмном 4 красíвой 5 хорóшем **2** 1e 2a 3d 4c
5b **3** 1 зелёном парке 2 Красной пло́щади 3 чёрном портфéле 4 жéлтой
юбке 5 сýнем нéбе
-

UNIT 33

- 1** 1b 2g 3e 4d 5a 6c 7h 8f **2** 1 красíвых здáниях 2 рýсских городáх 3
ночных клúбах 4 послéдних автóбусах 5 высóких дерéвьях **3** 1 Он рабóтает

на шумных заводах 2 Она делает покупки в дорогих магазинах 3 Мы читаем новости в вечерних газетах 4 Вы обедаете в маленьких ресторанах 5 Они отдыхают в красивых парках

UNIT 34

1 Svetlana walks into the house and notices that all the doors and windows are open. The new curtains are blowing about in the wind. The door, however, is shut. On the table a cat lies, howling. It is clearly glad to see her. She is furious when she realises that her son has gone out without feeding the cat. 'He is so unreliable!' she thinks. **2** 1 Это место свободно. 2 Его автомобиль новый. 3 Наши дети здоровы. 4 Все окна открыты. 5 Каша вкусна. **3** 1d 2a 3e 4b 5c **4** 1 рады 2 согласный открытый закрытый занятый

UNIT 35

1 My younger sister, Masha, really likes shopping. Yesterday she bought a bigger bag, a newer car, a more expensive radio, a more interesting book and a smaller mobile telephone

2 Моя младшая сестра, Маша, очень любит делать покупки. Вчера она купила большую сумку, более новый автомобиль, более дорогое радио, более интересную книгу и меньший мобильный телефон **3** 1g 2j 3i 4a 5h 6b 7c 8f 9e 10d

UNIT 36

1 You could use the short form comparative in 1, 3, 6, 7, 9, 10 **2** 1 Мой брат умнее 2 Эта книга менее скучная 3 Его машина дешевле 4 Мы купили более новый дом 5 Вы не знаете, где более удобный стул? 6 Это проще 7 До Москвы дальше 8 Мы получили более важное письмо 9 Это письмо короче 10 Это радио дороже **3** 1 Вадим 2 Иван

UNIT 37

1 1b 2d 3a 4e 5c **2** 1 Ольга намного добрее Ирины 2 Андрей намного серьезнее Константина 3 Он намного энергичнее меня 4 Мой брат намного ленивее моей сестры 5 Бабушка намного моложе девушки **3** 1 Это более серьезная проблема, чем его 2 Город Москва больше, чем Новгород. (Город Москва больше Новгорода) 3 Он старше меня 4 Ваш телевизор лучше моего 5 Я люблю более энергичную собаку

UNIT 38

1 1 Это самый красивый парк 2 Иван (самый) лучший футболист 3 Вот самая энергичная медсестра 4 Я читаю самую интересную книгу 5 Он живёт в самой маленькой квартире **2** 1 Он один из (самых) лучших гитаристов 2 Это самый красивый пляж 3 Чистейший вздор! 4 Где ближайшая остановка автобуса? 5 Это самая серьезная проблема **3** 1 Зима самое холодное время года. 2 Самый жаркий климат. 3 Водка самый крепкий напиток 4 Это самая красивая квартира

UNIT 39

1 1 глупо 2 приятно 3 хорошо 4 тепло 5 логически 6 гордо 7 впечатляюще 8 саркастично 9 эгоистически 10 щедро 11 тихо 12 шумно **2** 1 Нет, сегодня тепло 2 Нет, пианист блестяще играет 3 Нет, студент медленно работает 4 Нет, дети тихо играют 5 Нет, брат энергично играет

3 1 Испáнец говорйт по-испáнски 2 Рýсский говорйт по-рýсско 3
Англичáнин говорйт по-английски 4 Японец говорйт по-японски

UNIT 40

1 1b 2e 3d 4a 5c 2 1 Пианист хорошо игрáет, но гитарист игрáет ещé лúчше
2 Мой брат лениво игрáет, но твой брат игрáет ещé ленивее 3 Теннист
энергíчно игрáет, но футбóлист игрáет ещé энергíчнее 4 Баскетболист глóпо
игráет, но хоккейст игрáет ещé глóупее 5 Игрóк в гольф мéдленно игрáет, но
игрóк в крíкет игрáет ещé мéдленнее 3 1 Кáтя тýше говорйт, чем её сестrá.
2 Йóргор горáздо усерднее рабóтает, чем Валентýн 3 Татьяна поёт ещé хýже, чем
Зóя 4 Чем рáньше, тем лúчше 5 Как мóжно скóрее 4 1 лúчше всех 2
лúчше всегó 3 лúчше всех

UNIT 41

1 1 сто мýнус двáдцать бўдёт вóсемьдесят 2 два плюс шестнáдцать бўдёт
восемнáдцать 3 трíдцать три плюс сто два бўдёт сто трíдцать пять 4
двáдцать дéвять мýнус пятнáдцать бўдёт четýрнадцать 5 вóсемьдесят пять
мýнус пятьдесят четýре бўдёт трíдцать одиn 2 1b 2c 3e 4a 5d 3 1 42-93-12
сóрок два девяносто три двенáдцать 2 84-53-55 вóсемьдесят четýре пятьдесят
три пятьдесát пять 3 20-30-40 двáдцать трíдцать сóрок 4 36-62-73 трíдцать
шесть шестъдесят два сéмьдесят три 5 18-11-26 вóсемнáдцать одиnnадцать
двáдцать шесть 4 100 is the numeral involved. The advice is that it's more important to
have 100 friends than 100 roubles (i.e. friendship is more important than money)

UNIT 42

1 Boris recently went to two book shops and bought three books. Yesterday he was reading
his new book on chemistry. He read about 60 different experiments in 32 countries. Ninety-six
chemists had got results, but in 44 laboratories there had been accidents 2 1 четырёх 2
шестидесят 3 двацатý трéх 4 девяноста двух 5 ста десяти 3 1 сорокá 2
восемнáдцати 3 семидесят трéм 4 трéмстáм 5 шестистáм 4 1 трéмá 2
десятиó 3 двумястáмá 4 двадцатью 5 пятью 5 1 двенáдцати 2
восьмийдесят шестý 3 сорокá пяти 4 одиnnадцати 5 ста

UNIT 43

1 1 Два журнала 2 Шесть недéль 3 Сóрок человéк 4 Двáдцать три кóшки
5 Одиnnадцать часóв 6 Сто рублéй 7 Девятнáдцать киломéтров 8 Тýсяча
книг 9 Сто четыре мáльчика 10 Сто пять дéвушек 2 1 Две большиé собáки
2 Три мáленьких театра 3 Сто дéсять нóвых студéнтов 4 Пять стáрых домóв
5 Трíдцать два энергíчных мáльчика 3 1 пятý стáрым профессорам 2
двадцатý сердýтым клиéнтам 3 одиnnадцати шóмным хулигáнам 4 1 The
phrase с пятью нóвыми студéнтами is all in the instrumental, because of the preposition
с, which takes the instrumental 2 32 students are an animate object, but there is no animate
accusative for compounds of 2, 3, 4 3 There is an animate accusative for 2, 3, 4 on their
own 4 The preposition о is followed by the prepositional, so the whole phrase is in the
prepositional 5 Books are inanimate – so the numeral and its adjective and noun behave as
they would do if the numeral and its phrase were the subject (numeral + nom. pl. adj. + gen.
sing. noun).

UNIT 44

- 1** 1 Апрель четвёртый месяц года 2 Ноябрь одиннадцатый месяц года 3 Август восьмой месяц года 4 Май пятый месяц года 5 Июль седьмой месяц года **2** 1 Вадим купил туфли тридцать восьмого размёра 2 Татьяна купила туфли тридцатого размёра 3 Анна купила туфли тридцать второго размёра 4 Андрей купил туфли сорок трётьего размёра 5 Елена купила туфли тридцать шестого размёра **3** 1 Багаж на втором этаже 2 Фотоаппараты на третьем этаже 3 Туфли на четвёртом этаже 4 Книги на пятом этаже 5 Сувениры на шестом этаже **4** 1 Фотография школы на странице пятьдесят второй 2 Фотография театра на странице двести двадцать девятой 3 Фотография улицы на странице восьмидесят седьмой 4 Фотография актёра на странице шестьдесят первой 5 Фотография актрисы на странице десятой

UNIT 45

- 1** 1 без чётверти пять 2 девять часов 3 двадцать минут шестого 4 без десяти восьми 5 половина двенадцатого **2** 1 Поезд в Новосибирск отходит в семь пятнадцать 2 Поезд в Тверь отходит в четырнадцать пятьдесят пять 3 Поезд в Ялу отходит в двадцать один тридцать пять 4 Поезд в Воронеж отходит в девятнадцать тридцать 5 Поезд в Киров отходит в семнадцать десять **3** 1 Он встаёт в семь часов 2 Он завтракает в чётверть восьмого 3 Его рабочий день начинается без чётверти девять 4 Он обедает без тридцати пяти два 5 Его рабочий день кончается в половине шестого

UNIT 46

- 1** 1 Сегодня шестое ноября 2 Сегодня двадцать пятое августа 3 Сегодня седьмое января 4 Сегодня третье октября 5 Сегодня двадцать девятое февраля 6 Сегодня шестнадцатое апреля 7 Сегодня двадцать пятое июня 8 Сегодня первое сентября 9 Сегодня тридцать первое декабря **2** 1 Десятого августа я буду в Венеции 2 Шестнадцатого августа я буду в Берлине 3 Двадцатого августа я буду в Москве 4 Двадцать пятого августа я буду в Кирове 5 Тридцатого августа я буду в Новгороде **3** 1 Я поеду во Францию восемнадцатого августа 2 Мы получили письмо третьего апреля 3 Он позвонил мне тридцатого января 4 Её день рождения седьмого марта. 5 Они уехали из Германии двадцать второго ноября **4** 1 Пушкин родился в тысяча семьсот девяносто девятом году 2 Лермонтов родился в тысяча восемьсот четырнадцатом году 3 Блок родился в тысяча восемьсот восемьдесят девятом году 4 Ахматова родилась в тысяча восемьсот восемьдесят девятом году 5 Пастернак родился в тысяча восемьсот девяностом году 6 Цветаева родилась в тысяча восемьсот девяносто втором году

UNIT 47

- 1** 1 Сколько стоит деревянный стол? Тысяча двести пятьдесят рублей 2 Сколько стоит японский телевизор? Три тысячи рублей 3 Сколько стоит конверт? Три рубля двадцать копеек 4 Сколько стоит красная ручка? Пятнадцать рублей пятьдесят копеек 5 Сколько стоит бутылка красного вина? Сорок рублей **2** 1 Бабушке восьмидесят один год 2 Матери пятьдесят пять лет 3 Отцу (fleeting vowel!) пятьдесят четыре года 4 Сыну тридцать два года 5 Дочери тридцать лет 6 Внуку шестнадцать лет **3** 1 четыре килограмма

хлеба 2 полкило мяса 3 пять килограммов сахара 4 три килограмма помидоров 5 шесть килограммов апельсинов

UNIT 48

1 1 Он 2 Они 3 Вы 4 Мы 5 Они **2** 1 Он 2 Онó 3 Онá 4 Онí 5 Онí **3** 1 ты 2 ты 3 ты 4 вы (unless you know your boss very well!) 5 вы
4 1е 2д 3б 4а 5с

UNIT 49

1 1b 2c 3e 4a 5d **2** 1 Сегóдня я звонíо тебе 2 Сегóдня Ольга звонíт нам 3 Сегóдня он звонíт вам 4 Сегóдня Сáша звонíт ей 5 Сегóдня ты звонíшь емú
3 1 У тебе болít головá 2 У неё болít головá 3 У вас болít головá **4** 1 Я приглашаю егó на вечерíнку 2 Я приглашаю их на вечерíнку 3 Я приглашаю вас на вечерíнку

UNIT 50

1 1 Это егó дом? Да, егó 2 Это их собáка? Да, их 3 Это ваш пáспорт? Да, мой (наш) 4 Это моё письмо? Да, твоё (нашé) 5 Это нáша фотогráфия? Да, вáша **2** 1 Кáта, вот твоё письмо. Нет, это не мое 2 Вíктор вот твой свýтер. Нет, это не мой 3 Сáша и Аня, вот вáши книгы. Нет, это не нáши 4 Светлáна и Тáня, вот вáши фотогráфии. Нет, это не нáши 5 Андрéй, вот твой рубáшка. Нет, это не мой **3** 1d 2c 3e 4a 5b

UNIT 51

1 1с 2е 3а 4d 5b **2** 1 Какýю квартиру вы покупáете? 2 Какóй автомобиль вы покупáете? 3 Какóе окно вы покупáете? 4 Какóй велосипéд вы покупáете? 5 Какíе книгы вы покупáете? **3** 1 Чей это гáлстук? 2 Чей это чемодáн? 3 Чья это юбка? 4 Чьё это плáтье? 5 Чьи это носки? **4** 1 Какýю газéту вы читáете? 2 О чём вы дóмаете (ты дóмашь)? 3 С кем вы идёте (ты идёшь) в магазíн? 4 Что это? Книга или жúрнал? 5 Чьи это дéти?

UNIT 52

1 1 Вы предпочитáете это пальто или то пальто, вон там? 2 Вы предпочитáете эту шáпку или ту шáпку, вон там? 3 Вы предпочитáете этот шарф или тот шарф, вон там? 4 Вы предпочитáете эту рубáшку или ту рубáшку, вон там? 5 Вы предпочитáете эти тýфли или те тýфли, вон там? **2** 1 Кто э́то? Э́то наш врач 2 Онí живéт в э́том дóме 3 Вчera мы бýли в teátre с Борýсом и Сергéем. Тот рабóтает врачом 4 Вы ужé знаéте об э́той проблемé? 5 Вот та же книга! 6 Он получíл тот же сáмый гáлстук 7 Мы читáем ту же газéту 8 Онí рабóтают на э́тих завóдах 9 Я идú в teátre с такíми интересными друзьями. 10 Лúчшие магазíны на э́той улице **3** 1 В какóм горóде ты живёшь? 2 Кто э́то? 3 Э́то такáя красíвая фотогráфия! 4 Какýю шáпку ты предпочитáешь?

UNIT 53

1 1b 2c 3e 4a 5d **2** 1 Мóжно купíть марки в любóм магазíне 2 Сам композíтор идёт на концéрт 3 Есть такíе городá по всей Áнглии 4 У менé подárки для кáждого ребёнка 5 Он идёт к самому дирéктору **3** 3 1 Мы рабóтаем кáждый день 2 Актриса самá идёт в teátre 3 Я подождú у сáмой библиотéки 4 Все нáши друзья идúт на концéрт 5 Какíе билéты вы хотíте?

Любые. 4 1 в любом магазине 2 в каждом магазине 3 во всех магазинах
4 в самом центре

UNIT 54

- 1 The tourist came into his room and shut the door behind him*. He saw in front of him* a large room with a bed, a chair and a washbasin, but no towels. He was glad he had brought some with him*. As he was feeling* rather tired, he decided to have a wash and a sleep, although he imagined* that the bed would not be very comfortable. 2 1d 2a 3b 4e 5c
 3 1 Он хорошо ведёт себя 2 Я представляю себе, что это трудно 3 Закрой за собой дверь! 4 Я плохо чувствую себя 5 Мы купили шампанское для себя
 4 1 Что вы купили для себя? 2 Он думает только о себе 3 Я беру с собой вино 4 Мы берём с собой собаку

UNIT 55

- 1 Ольга, которая живёт в Кирове, продавщица 2 Наши друзья, которые живут в Можайске, учителя 3 Виктор, который живёт в Москвe, переводчик 4 Саша, который живёт в Воронеже, юрист 5 Аня, которая живёт в Ялте, медсестра 6 Вадим, который живёт в Обнинске, гид 2 1 Велосипед, который Ольга купила, большой 2 Джинсы, которые Ольга купила, модные 3 Цветы, которые Ольга купила, красивые 4 Юбка, которую Ольга купила, короткая 3
 1 Друг, к которому мы идём, музыкант 2 Здания, в которых они работают, очень большие 3 Врач, с которым она говорила, очень хороший 4 Фильм, о котором вы говорите, не очень хороший. 5 Студенты, от которых мы получили письмо, работают в Африке. 4 1 Собака, которую ты сфотографировал, очень старая 2 Школа, о которой ты говоришь, очень хорошая

UNIT 56

- 1 1d 2e 3b 4a 5c 2 1 кто 2 кто 3 что 4 что 5 что 6 что

UNIT 57

- 1 Someone called to see you this morning. He said something about a meeting tomorrow. For some reason he didn't want to talk to me. He just said that if you can't be on time you should ring anyone in the office 2 Кто-то позвонил тебе сегодня утром. Он сказал, что-то о совещании завтра. Он почему-то не хотел говорить со мной. Он сказал только, что если вы не сможете приехать вовремя, надо позвонить кому-нибудь в офисе. 3 1 что-то 2 когда-нибудь 3 что-нибудь 4 где-нибудь 5 кого-то 6 каком-то офисе

UNIT 58

- 1 1 вы знаете 2 ты понимаешь 3 я кашляю 4 она работает 5 они отвечают 6 мы спрашиваем 7 он покупает 8 мы гуляем 9 вы слышите 10 ты умеешь 2 1 Вы слушаете радио 2 Мы играем в теннис 3 Ты покупаешь чай. 4 Она понимает вопрос? 5 Я знаю директора 3 1 покупаю 2 отвечает 3 понимаю 4 играешь 5 гуляют

UNIT 59

- 1 1 я смотрю 2 ты строишь 3 он стоит 4 вы курите 5 они варят 6 мы готовим 7 я лежу 8 она стоит 9 вы слышите 10 ты говоришь 2 1 Вы слышите радио 2 Мы стоим у окна 3 Они строят дом 4 Она смотрит

фильм? 5 Ты звонишь директору **3** 1 звоню 2 слышите 3 стоит 4 смотришь 5 стоит

UNIT 60

1 1 я люблю 2 я сплю 3 я говорю 4 я сижу 5 я ложу 6 я стою 7 я прошу 8 я смотрю 9 я кормлю 10 я звоню **2** 1 сидит 2 готовлю 3 возит 4 ношу 5 летите **3** 1b 2e 3a 4c 5d

UNIT 61

1 1 мы берём 2 я живу 3 вы пьёте 4 они кладут 5 он идёт 6 ты поешь 7 я лью 8 они ждут 9 я пью 10 мы живём **2** 1 я 2 они 3 мы 4 ты 5 они 6 вы 7 он (она, он) **3** Иван поёт. Вадим пьёт **4** 1 Иван пьёт водку 2 Ольга живёт в квартире 3 Он ходит в театре 4 Мы берём билеты 5 Они поют сегодня вечером

UNIT 62

1 1 Я часто пишу моему другу 2 Сегодня мы едем в центр города 3 Он не может прийти в театр 4 Вы не очень часто можете посуду 5 Почему ты плачешь? 6 Они ищут свой паспорт 7 Турист не хочет смотреть фильм 8 Кому вы пишете? 9 Вы едете в музей или в цирк? 10 Нет, спасибо, я не хочу кофе **2** 1 они 2 он 3 они 4 я 5 ты 6 он 7 они 8 вы 9 мы 10 ты

UNIT 63

1 1 я танцую 2 ты даешь 3 он рекомендует 4 мы встаем 5 высовываете 6 они рисуют 7 она узнает 8 я использую 9 мы требуем 10 они путешествуют **2** 1 Мой брат – инженер 2 Сегодня холодно 3 На столе есть ключ 4 В деревне нет магазинов **3** 1 У Вадима есть дом. 2 У Бориса нет автомобиля. 3 У Тани есть телевизор. 4 У Зои есть квартира 5 У Игоря нет кошки. 6 У Сергея нет компьютера. **4** 1e 2d 3a 4c 5b

UNIT 64

1 1 я умываюсь 2 он причесывается **2** 1c 2a 3f 4j 5d 6b 7h 8e 9i 10g **3** 1 Я одеваюсь в восемь часов 2 Он умывается в семь часов 3 Они раздеваются в десять часов 4 Концерт кончается в десять часов 5 Вы ложитесь спать в одиннадцать часов

UNIT 65

1 Imperfective: I speaking 3 to read 4 playing perfective: 2 to write 5 to return
2 1 говорить 2 написать 3 читать 4 играть 5 вернуться **3** 1 Он предпочитает читать газеты 2 Я хочу послать это письмо сегодня 3 Актёр начинает говорить в семь часов 4 Мы продолжаем смотреть телевизор 5 Они любят отдыхать на пляже 6 Я хочу взять книгу сейчас 7 Мы хотим купить эту собачку 8 Вы предпочитаете слушать радио? 9 Она любит обедать в два часа 10 Вы хотите вернуться сегодня?

UNIT 66

1 On Saturday I fly to Saint Petersburg at 10am. While I am there I will have meetings with Russian representatives of the company, but I hope that I will also visit some museums and

theatres. I promise that I will ring you as regularly as I can during my stay, or else I will use e-mail at the hotel **2** 1 Он ча́сто бу́дет звони́ть дру́гу 2 Бáушка бу́дет отды́хать дóма 3 Мы бу́дем игрáть в гольф кáждый день 4 Зáттра я бу́ду занимáться урóками 5 В университе́те он бу́дет изучáть истóрию **3** 1b 2e 3c 4a 5d

UNIT 67

1 *I will ring you tomorrow at 10am, then I will write a letter to the director. As far as I know, he will be visiting lots of offices in England, but he has promised that he will visit our office on Tuesday. He will be considering all our proposals before his departure. Hopefully he will sign the contract on Tuesday* **2** 1 позвони́о 2 накормлó 3 пообéдаю 4 куплó 5 вы́учу **3** 2 Во вто́рник я куплó подárki 3 В сре́ду я позвони́о мáме 4 В четвéрг я напишú письмо бáрату 5 В пятни́цу я вы́учу граммáтику 6 В суббо́ту я отремонти́рую машíну 7 В воскreséнье я закажú билéты

UNIT 68

1 1 Ольга зáвтракала 2 Меня зовут Елéна, я мýла посýду 3 Он игрáл в кárты 4 Мы смотрéли телевíзор 5 Вы возвращáлись в óфис 6 Онí писáли пíсьма 7 Борíс и Светлáна готовили обéд **2** *When we used to live in a flat it was impossible to have a dog, but when we moved into a house with a garden, we bought one. He was a large black mongrel and he loved to play in the garden. One day he was barking by the gate when the postman arrived. He thought the dog was aggressive and refused to come in* **3** 1 process, not necessarily complete; it went on for 2 hours 2 action of playing is interrupted 3 description of where you were; быть exists only in imperfective 4 action of walking is interrupted 5 habit in the past

UNIT 69

1 2 Хорошó! Вадíм ужé вы́мыл посýду 3 Хорошó! вы ужé приготóвили обéд 4 Хорошó! онí ужé сдéлали покúпки 5 Хорошó! Нáда ужé накормíла собáку 6 Хорошó! Йóргу ужé вы́стирал бельё **2** *She had already finished the book when the phone rang. It was Boris, inviting her to the theatre. She refused politely, because she had already agreed to go to the cinema with Sergei. While she was speaking to Boris, her brother rang the doorbell. She hung up quickly and rushed to the door. Her brother was looking tired. 'I have brought the plants you asked for,' he said.* 1 Йóргу и Зóя ремонтировали автомóбиль, когдá Борíс позвони́л 2 Йóргу и Зóя стириáли бельё, когдá стириáльная машíна сломáлась 3 Йóргу и Зóя сажáли дерéвья в садú, когдá сын вернúлся 4 Йóргу и Зóя дéлали покúпки, когдá Зóя потеряла дéньги

UNIT 70

1 1 е́здил 2 бéгаet 3 плáвал 4 летáem 5 возíла **2** 1 édet 2 бежíйт 3 плывéйт 4 летéли 5 везлá **3** 1 поéдет 2 побегу 3 поплыvéйт 4 полетéли 5 повезлá **4** 1 несёт 2 понёс 3 нёс

UNIT 71

1 1 вы́хожу 2 подхожу 3 приезжáет 4 вхожу 5 приезжáю 6 вы́хожу 7 прохожу 8 вхожу **2** 1 в 2 к 3 до 4 из 5 на 6 из 7 мýмo 8 с 9 от 10 чéрез **3** 1 Я вхожу в теáтр 2 Он вноси́т книгí в кóмнату 3 Мы вы́бегаем из пárка 4 Онí перевóдят собáку чéрез ýлицу

UNIT 72

1 1 напишет 2 пропылесосит 3 выстирает 4 встáнет 5 почíстит 2 1 приéдет вóвремя 2 не забúдет свой дéньги 3 позвонít профéссору 4 напишет письмó (своемý) бráту 5 продáст (свой) мотоцикль 6 даст мне подáрок 7 закáжет билéты 8 кúпит собáку 9 сдéляет покúпки 10 вернétся ráно 3 1 We are always glad if they send us a card ✓ 2 They will not be pleased if you don't send them a card ✗ 3 You are never satisfied if the food is cold ✓ 4 If you don't ring me tonight I will be furious ✗

UNIT 73

1 1b 2e 3a 4c 5d 2 1 Если бы у них бýли дéньги, онý построили бы дáчу 2 Если бы у нас бýли дéньги, мы купíли бы подáрки для друзéй 3 Если бы у него бýли дéньги, Пáвел сидéл бы дóма 4 Если бы у неё бýли дéньги, Кáтя купíла бы нóвую одéждú 5 Если бы у вас бýли дéньги, вы достáли бы билéты в Большóй 3 1 Если бы тóлько мы не забыли, Áня не рассердíлась бы на нас. 2 Если бы тóлько она знала об этом, она позвонíла бы ему. 3 Если бы тóлько мы пришли вóвремя, мы увидели бы их. 4 1 Бýло бы лúчше, если бы онá согласíлась на это 2 Бýло бы лúчше, если бы у него был телефáкс 3 Бýло бы лúчше, если бы я знал/знала егó áдрес

UNIT 74

1 1h 2c 3j 4a 5f 6b 7i 8g 9d 10e 2 1 спи 2 напиши 3 берí 4 купí 5 поблагодарí 3 1 забúдьте 2 отдыхáйте 3 слúшайте 4 рабóтайте 5 улыбáйтесь 4 1 Не забúдьте билéты! 2 Не курíть! 3 Передáйте ключ, пожáлуйста 4 Давáйте позвонíм Táне

UNIT 75

1 Вíктор никогдá не поёт пéсни 2 Вíктор нигдé не слúшает поп-мúзыку 3 Вíктор ни с кем не слúшает поп-мúзыку 4 Вíкторничéго не знает о мúзыке 2 1 Я не люблó смотрéть фíльмы 2 Здесь нет кинотéатра 3 Яничéм не занимáюсь в свободное врéмя 4 Я нигдé не люблó отдыkháти 3 1b 2c 3d 4e 5a

UNIT 76

1 1e 2a 3h 4b 5g 6j 7i 8f 9c 10d 2 1 Ивáну и Марíи нéкогда смотрéть телевíзор 2 Ивáну и Марíи нéчем писа́ть пíсьма 3 Ивáну и Марíи нéкого приглашáть на обéд 4 Ивáну и Марíи нéчего пить 5 Ивáну и Марíи нéкому звонíть 3 1 Вам нéчего бýдет дéлать 2 Борíсу нé с кем бýло говорýть 3 Нéчего есть 4 Врачú нéкогда бýло отдыkháти 5 Нам нéчего бýло читáти

UNIT 77

1 1 порá 2 нельзя 3 мóжно 4 надо 5 нельзя 2 1c 2a 3b 3 1 Ему надо отдыkháти в больнице 2 Нам порá бýло идти 3 Мóжно (возмóжно) бýдет пláвать 4 Нет, вам (тебé) нельзя смотрéть телевíзор 5 Да, вам (тебé) надо работáть

UNIT 78

1 1c 2a 3e 4b 5d 2 1 Я спросíл(а), приéдет ли Борíс зáвтра. 2 Я спросíл(а), заплатíла ли Ольга за кни́ги 3 Я спросíл(а), пожáловались ли клиéнты на товáры 4 Я спросíл(а), позвонíл ли Борíс дирéктору 5 Я

спросіл(а), вернётся ли Ольга **3** 1 Мы спросіл, мόжно ли позавтракать в 8 часов 2 Он спросіл, пошёл ли друг на дискотеку 3 Он нам сказа́л /Он сказа́л нам, когда вернётся 4 Ты не знаешь, получила ли она письмо? 5 Я хочу знать, подпишет ли директор контракт

UNIT 79

1 1 Врач трéбует, чтобы спортсмен не курíл 2 Гид рекомéндует, чтобы туристы обéдали в ресторанах 3 Профéссор трéбует, чтобы студенты прочитáли всю книгу 4 Я хочу, чтобы мой сын стал врачом 5 Дéти, хотят, чтобы родители купíли дорогие игрушки **2** 1c 2e 3d 4b 5a **3** 1 Я хочу, чтобы вы позвони́ли (ты позвони́л/а) мне завтра. 2 Врач хóчет, чтобы пациент лежа́л в постели. 3 Профéссор трéбует, чтобы студенты рабо́тали в библиотéке 4 Милиционéр предла́гает, чтобы вы пошли́ (ты пошёл/ты пошлá) домой 5 Я приказа́л(а), чтобы они сéли

UNIT 80

1 1 Мы хотíм купíть телевíзор, чтобы смотрéть матчи 2 Вы хотите позвонить дру́гу, чтобы пригласи́ть его на концéрт 3 Ты хóчешь написа́ть письмо, чтобы переда́ть новости 4 Онí хотят посеща́ть Москву́, чтобы вíдеть интересные места 5 Туристы хотят посеща́ть пляжи, чтобы отды́хать **2** 1 Борис позвони́л, чтобы онá отве́тила на вопрос 2 Борис позвони́л, чтобы он извини́лся 3 Борис позвони́л, чтобы мы обсуди́ли ситуáцию 4 Борис позвони́л, чтобы вы пригласи́ли его на обéд 5 Борис позвони́л, чтобы они заказа́ли биле́ты **3** 1 позвони́ть 2 чтобы позвони́ть 3 чтобы друг позвони́л

UNIT 81

1 1 Им скúчно 2 Мне хóлодно 3 Ей жаль собáку 4 Ему нráвится плава́ть. 5 Тебé хóчется пить 6 Вам удалóсь найти ключ. **2** 1b 2e 3c 4a 5d **3** 1 Ему нráвится актриса 2 Врач нráвится больни́ца 3 Профéссору нráвятся студенты 4 Вам понра́вилась экскурсия 5 Онá нráвится мне **4** 1 Мне надоéло 2 Мне жárко 3 Мне хóже

UNIT 82

1 1 Я пью и винó и вóдку 2 Я не играю ни в крикет, ни в футбо́л 3 Я люблю́ оперу, а он люби́т балéт 4 Я не иду́ на концéрт, потому что прогрáмма неинтересная 5 Я не знаю, где он рабо́тает **2** 1 Она обеща́ла написа́ть письмо, но она забыла 2 Он изучáет матемáтику и фíзику 3 Серéй печáлен, и никто́ не обращáет внимáния на него 4 Туристы сердиты, потому что в гостинице хóлодно. 5 Дирéктор думает, что клиéнт довóлен **3** 1 а 2 когда 3 или 4 из-за того, что 5 где 6 но 7 ни... ни **4** 1 Я рад (ráда), потому что (так как/из-за того, что) он купíл билéт 2 Я хочу́ пойти на концéрт, но билéтов нет 3 Вы хотите два билéта или три?

UNIT 83

1 1 Дом в гóроде 2 Цéрковь в дерéвне 3 Кни́га в шкафу 4 Автомобíль на улице 5 Компью́тер в офисе 6 Брайсто́ль на западе Англии 7 Поезд на стáнции 8 Тигр в зоопárке 9 Почтальон на почте 10 Пианист на концéрте **2** 1 Секретáрь идёт на рабо́ту 2 Вíктор идёт на стадион 3 Учитель идёт в школу

4 Студéнт идёт на лéкцию 5 Собáка идёт в сад 6 1 школе 2 сéвере 3 рабóту
4 Красной Площади 5 Франции 6 вокзál 7 Крымú 8 бассéйне 9 Москвú 10 саду

UNIT 84

1 1 между 2 у 3 под 4 перед 5 над 6 за 2 1 Ольга думает, что рóчка под книгами, но он у телефона 2 Ольга думает, что билéты за зéркалom, но он под пасpортom 3 Ольга думает, что автомобиль перед дóмом, но он за дóмом 4 Ольга думает, что портрéт над камíном, но он над столом 5 Ольга думает, что холодильник между шкафами, но он за дvéry

UNIT 85

1 1 от 2 к 3 по 4 мýмо 5 из 6 чéрез 2 1 улицу 2 кáссе 3 когó 4 Италии 5 кáссы
3 1 Она не любит ходить по магазýнам 2 Проféssor спешит к студéнтам 3 Собáка перехóдит чéрез улицу

UNIT 86

1 1 понедéлник, е 2 втóрникам, g 3 этот момéнт, j 4 пáтницу, b 5 сréдам, a 6 воскресéньям, c 7 четвергáм, i 8 четвергáм, d 9 пáтницу, f 10 суббóту, h 2 1 в понедéлик, в пáтницу и в суббóту 2 во втóрник 3 в воскресéнье

UNIT 87

1 1 в этoм году 2 на этoй недéле 3 в мáрте 4 в июне 5 в бóдущем году 6 в февралé 7 в этoм мéсяце 8 в аvгустe 9 на бóдущей недéле 10 в двáдцать péрвом вéке 2 1 День рожdения Серéя в мáрте 2 День рожdения Áни в апрéле 3 День рожdения Татьяны в сентябрé 4 День рожdения сестры в декабрé 5 День рожdения брата в янвáре 6 День рожdения мужа в октябрé 7 День рожdения Кáти в аvгустe 8 День рожdения Вадíма в мае 9 День рожdения Зóи в июне 10 День рожdения Йоргия в ноябрé 3 1 В декабрé мы любим кататься на лíжах 2 В аvгустe мы любим лéжать на пляже 3 В февралé мы любим сидеть дóма 4 В июле мы любим гулять в дерéвne

UNIT 88

1 1 во врéмя 2 за 3 чéрез 4 назáд 5 после 6 с ... до 7 за 2 1 после тогó, как, g 2 во врéмя, d 3 за, a 4 чéрез, f 5 назáд, b 6 до, i 7 с, j 8 за, h 9 во врéмя, c 10 до тогó, как, e

UNIT 89

1 1 крóме 2 для 3 без 4 прóтив 5 в 6 по 7 о 8 при 9 за 10 на 2 1d Мы поблагодарили её за подáрок, 2a Онí живýт в дóме напрóтив больницы, 3b Вы за или прóтив этoй идéй?, 4e Крóме Бориса все довóльны, 5c Онí ходили на дискотéку без менé! 3 1 Я купил(а) духí для неё. 2 Спасíбо за предложéние. 3 О чéм вы говорíли?

UNIT 90

1 1 в с, 2 у f, 3 на e, 4 за h, 5 с g, 6 к b, 7 в a, 8 на d 2 1 Борис играет в футbóл 2 Татьяна играет на фléите 3 1 Мы сердýмся на тебé/vas 2 Мы надéмся на лúчшее 3 Он отвечáет на мой вопрос 4 Не надо жáловаться на письмо 5 Платите за книgи в кáссе 6 Онí продают стул за дvésti rubléй 7 Мы покупáем стул у Áни 8 вы играете на гитáре? 9 Посмотрите на собáку! 10 Обычно мы начинáем с péрвой страницы

GLOSSARY OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS

adjective A word which describes a noun: a *boring* film.

adverb A word which gives us information about the way in which an action is carried out: he sings *well*; she sings *very badly*.

animate noun A person or an animal.

article Words meaning *a*, *an*, *the*, *some*. There are no articles in Russian.

aspects Most Russian verbs exist in two forms, imperfective and perfective. The imperfective is concerned with process or description and the perfective is concerned with result and successful completion.

case There are six cases in Russian – nominative, accusative, genitive, dative, instrumental, prepositional. A case indicates what role nouns, adjectives and pronouns are playing in the sentence and the endings of these words change according to their case.

clause A group of words that contains a verb. A main clause can be followed by a subordinate clause: *Champagne is a drink* (main clause), *which I love* (subordinate clause).

comparative Adjectives and adverbs in the comparative indicate *more/less*: This is a *more* boring film; he sings *less* well than his sister.

conjugation The way verb endings change when in a tense.

conjunction Words which link sentences or phrases (e.g. *and*, *but*, *because*).

declension The way noun endings change when not in the nominative case.

gender A category of noun. In Russian there are three categories: masculine, feminine and neuter.

infinitive The form of the word meaning *to* (e.g. *to do*, *to read*, *to write*). In Russian most verbs have two infinitives, the imperfective and the perfective.

negative A word or phrase denying or contradicting something: I *never* watch television; he *can't* sing.

noun Word used to name a person, an animal, an object or an abstract quality: *Viktor, Moscow, postman, happiness*.

object Person or thing that has an action done to it.

preposition Word used before a noun or pronoun to show position, time, method: *in, at, from, with*.

pronoun A word used in place of a noun or phrase: *him, she, this, which, who*

relative clause Part of a sentence introduced by a relative pronoun: These are my friends *who live in Russia*.

subject Person or thing doing an action.

superlative Adjectives and adverbs in the superlative indicate *most*: *This is the most boring film; he sings best of all*.

tense Tells us when the action of the verb takes/took/will take place:

He reads present tense

He will read future tense

He was reading past tense

He read past tense

He had read past tense

verb Words which describe actions, feelings and states.

USEFUL VOCABULARY

больше всегó	<i>most of all</i>
брать/взять	<i>to take</i>
бутылка	<i>bottle</i>
важный	<i>important</i>
герой	<i>hero</i>
год	<i>year</i>
дерево	<i>tree</i>
друг	<i>friend</i>
знать	<i>to know</i>
кухня	<i>kitchen</i>
любить	<i>to like, love</i>
марка	<i>stamp</i>
медсестра	<i>nurse</i>
месяц	<i>month</i>
много	<i>many, a lot</i>
наконец	<i>finally</i>
особенно	<i>especially</i>
отвечать/ответить	<i>to answer</i>
переводчик	<i>translator, interpreter</i>
пиво	<i>beer</i>
писаться/написаться	<i>to write</i>
письмо	<i>letter</i>
плавание	<i>swimming</i>
посещать/посетить	<i>to visit</i>
почта	<i>post office</i>
почтальон	<i>postman</i>
продавщица	<i>sales assistant (f.)</i>
спрашивать/спросить	<i>to ask</i>
учитель	<i>teacher</i>
юрист	<i>lawyer</i>